



XF
OWNER'S HANDBOOK

Publication Part No. JJM 10 02 40 151

Introduction

ABOUT THIS HANDBOOK

Please take the time to study all of the owner/operator literature supplied with your vehicle as soon as possible.

IMPORTANT

The information contained in this handbook covers all vehicle derivatives and optional equipment, some of which will not be fitted to your vehicle. Due to printing cycles, this handbook may include descriptions of options before they become generally available.

The vehicle options, hardware and software, are designed for the market in which the vehicle is intended for original sale. If your vehicle is to be used in another geographical area, the vehicle may have to be modified to suit local conditions. Jaguar Land Rover Limited is not responsible for the cost of any modifications. Warranty conditions may be affected.

The information contained in this publication was correct when it went to print. Subsequent vehicle design changes may result in a supplement being added to the literature pack. Updates can also be viewed on the Jaguar internet site at: <http://www.ownerinfo.jaguar.com>.

In the interest of development, the right is reserved to change specifications, design, or equipment at any time without notice and without incurring any obligations. This publication, or part thereof, may not be reproduced nor translated without our approval. Errors and omissions excepted.

SYMBOLS USED IN THIS HANDBOOK

 Safety warnings indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury.

 Cautions indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of damage to your vehicle.



This recycling symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of safely in order to prevent unnecessary damage to the environment.



This symbol identifies those features that can be adjusted, disabled or enabled by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

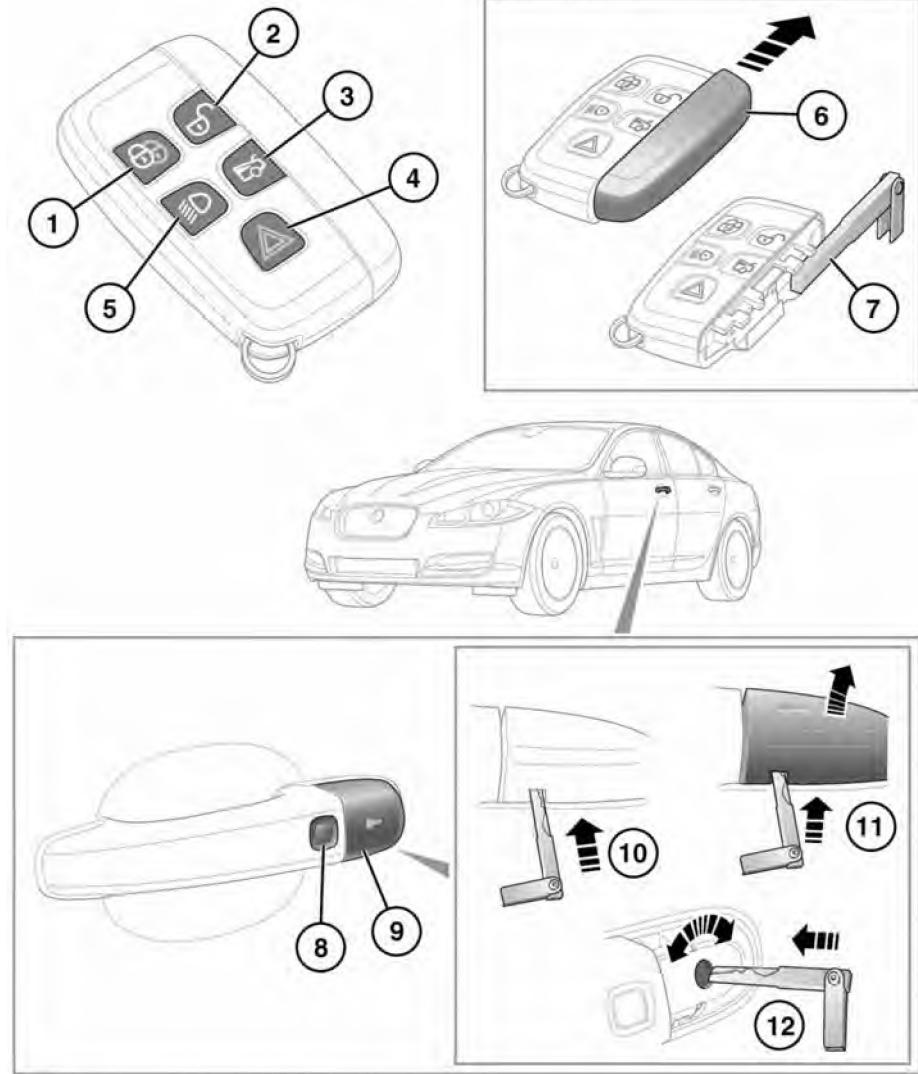
©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2014.

All rights reserved.

Introduction.....	2	DAB radio.....	110
Entering the vehicle.....	4	Portable media.....	113
Exiting the vehicle.....	13	Television.....	119
Front seats.....	16	Video media player.....	121
Rear seats.....	20	Voice control.....	123
Head restraints.....	24	Telephone.....	126
Steering wheel.....	26	Navigation system.....	131
Seat belts.....	27	Fuel and refuelling.....	146
Child safety.....	31	Maintenance.....	153
Airbags.....	37	Vehicle cleaning.....	159
Instrument panel.....	41	Fluid level checks.....	162
Warning lamps.....	43	Vehicle battery.....	171
Exterior lights.....	47	Fuses.....	175
Interior lights.....	50	Tyres.....	182
Wipers and washers.....	51	Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....	192
Mirrors.....	54	Tyre repair kit.....	194
Blind spot monitoring.....	56	Wheel changing.....	198
Garage door opener.....	58	Vehicle recovery.....	202
Windows.....	61	After a collision.....	205
Touch screen.....	63	Vehicle labels.....	207
Heating and ventilation.....	67	Technical specifications.....	208
Storage compartments.....	70	Type approval.....	218
Luggage compartment.....	72	Index.....	221
Towing.....	76	Controls overview.....	238
Starting the engine.....	80		
Intelligent stop/start.....	82		
Gearbox.....	84		
Stability control.....	87		
Suspension.....	89		
Brakes.....	90		
Parking aids.....	92		
Automatic speed limiter (ASL).....	94		
Cruise control.....	95		
Adaptive cruise control.....	96		
Audio/video overview.....	102		
Radio.....	108		

Entering the vehicle

UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE



E143540

1. Press the lock button to secure the vehicle. The vehicle can be Single or Double locked. See 13, **SINGLE LOCKING** and 13, **DOUBLE LOCKING**.
2. Your vehicle can be unlocked using either Single or Multi-point entry. When Single-point entry is enabled, the first press unlocks the driver's door and enables the other doors to be opened from the inside. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice, to indicate that the vehicle is unlocked and the alarm has been disarmed. A second press unlocks the passenger doors and the Luggage compartment. If Multi-point entry is enabled, press briefly to unlock all of the doors and the Luggage compartment, and to disarm the alarm. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice to indicate that the vehicle is unlocked and the alarm has been disarmed. To change from Single to Multi-point entry (or vice versa), press both the lock and unlock buttons on the Smart key simultaneously for 3 seconds. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice to confirm the change. The change can also be achieved using the Touch screen. See 65, **VEHICLE SETTINGS**.
3. Press to open the Luggage compartment. The vehicle's security system will remain active for the period that the Luggage compartment is open, but the intrusion and inclination sensing systems will be inhibited. Door and bonnet security will remain active. The security system will re-arm to its previous state when the Luggage compartment is closed.
4. Panic alarm: Press and hold for 3 seconds, or press 3 times within 3 seconds, to activate the horn, siren, and hazard lamps.

After 5 seconds, the alarm can be cancelled by pressing the button and holding for 3 seconds, or pressing 3 times within 3 seconds. The emergency alarm will also be cancelled if the vehicle detects a valid Smart key when the **START/STOP** button is pressed.

5. Press to switch on the approach illumination for up to 120 seconds. The illumination time is set using the exit delay switch on the lighting control. Pressing the button again, or operating the **START/STOP** button, will turn the Approach lamps off.
6. Slide and remove the cover to expose the emergency key blade.
7. Remove the emergency key blade.
8. Keyless locking button. See 14, **KEYLESS LOCKING**.
9. Emergency lock cover. The appropriate cover has a key symbol embossed into it.
10. Insert the key blade into the slot below the cover.
11. Carefully lift the key blade to lever the cover off of the retaining clips.
12. Insert the key blade into the exposed lock to operate.

To unlock: Turn the key blade towards the rear of the vehicle and release to unlock the door. If the security system is disarmed, all of the doors and the Luggage compartment will be unlocked. If the vehicle is unlocked using the emergency key blade with the security system armed, the alarm will sound when the door is unlocked. To deactivate the alarm, press the unlock button on the Smart key, or press the engine **START/STOP** button with the Smart key inside the vehicle.

Entering the vehicle

To lock: Make sure that all of the doors are closed, then turn the key blade towards the front of the vehicle and release. This will lock all of the doors, but will not arm the alarm.

Replacing the door lock cover:

1. Align the cover to engage the bottom 2 clips.
2. Push the top of the cover to engage the upper clip.

KEYLESS ENTRY

! Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should make sure that the device is kept at a distance of at least 23 cm (9 in) away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device. For information concerning the locations of the security system transmitters, see 215, SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS.

! If a Smart key is lost, a replacement can be obtained and programmed to the vehicle by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer. Notify a Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as a Smart key is lost or stolen and have the remaining Smart key(s) reprogrammed.

! The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container, or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including in a laptop bag), games console, etc. Keep the Smart key clear of such devices when attempting Keyless entry or Keyless starting.

Keyless entry allows the vehicle to be unlocked and disarmed by simply operating the door handle, provided the Smart key is within 1.0 m (39 in).

The Smart key needs only to be on the driver's person, it does not need to be exposed or handled. However, the Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metallic container.

Note: Keyless entry will unlock the vehicle in accordance with the current security setting (Single-point or Multi-point entry). However, if Single-point entry is the current setting and a door other than the driver's door is opened first, all of the doors will unlock.

When all open doors have been closed, the system will search the vehicle's interior for a valid Smart key. If one is not detected, **SMART KEY NOT FOUND** will be displayed in the Message centre.

The security system fitted to your vehicle is Thatcham category 1 approved and meets EU regulations 97/116 and EU directive 95/56 EC.

CONVENIENCE MODE

When the door is opened using either the Smart key or Keyless entry, the vehicle's electrical system initiates the Convenience mode. The following systems become functional:

- Driver position memory.
- Seat and steering column adjustment.
- Interior and exterior lighting.
- Message centre.
- Auxiliary power socket.

GLOBAL OPENING

Press and hold the unlock button on the Smart key for 3 seconds. The vehicle will unlock and the alarm will be disarmed immediately. After 3 seconds, all of the windows and the sunroof will open.

To stop window movement during Global opening when using the Smart key, press any of the buttons on the Smart key or operate the driver's window switch. To stop a particular window from opening, operate the relevant window switch.

Note: Global opening can be enabled/disabled via the Vehicle settings menu on the Touch screen. See 65, VEHICLE SETTINGS.

DRIVE-AWAY LOCKING

Locks all of the doors when the vehicle exceeds a set speed. Use of the central locking/unlocking buttons (see 238, DRIVER CONTROLS), will override the Drive-away locking feature for the rest of a journey.

If a door is individually unlocked and opened, all of the doors will relock when the open door is subsequently closed.

Note: Drive-away locking and the speed at which it activates can be enabled/disabled via the **Security** menu, from the Vehicle settings menu on the Touch screen. See 65, VEHICLE SETTINGS.

STEERING COLUMN LOCK

Your vehicle is fitted with an electronic steering column lock. The column unlocks when a Smart key is detected inside the vehicle.

If any malfunction of the steering column lock occurs, **STEERING COLUMN LOCKED** will be displayed in the Message centre. If this occurs:

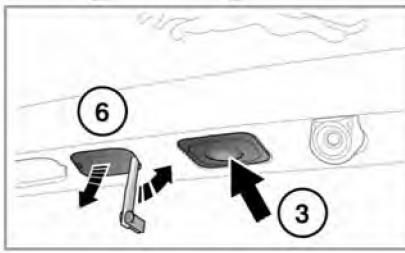
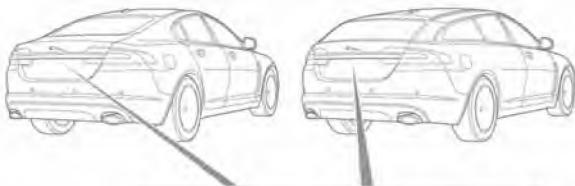
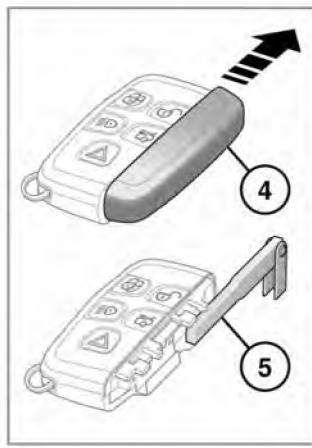
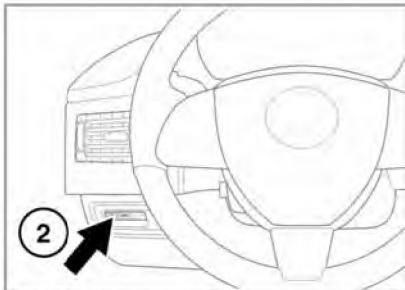
1. Lock and then unlock the vehicle using the Smart key.

2. Try again to unlock the steering column lock, by turning the steering wheel gently to the left and right while locking and then unlocking the vehicle using the Smart key.
3. If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT

-  If the Luggage compartment is opened after the driver and passenger doors are locked, make sure that the Smart key remains outside the vehicle when it is closed again.
-  If the Smart key is inadvertently left inside the Luggage compartment and the vehicle is locked and alarmed, a warning sounds and the compartment will re-open after 3 seconds.
-  The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container, or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including when inside a laptop bag), games console, etc.
-  Do not repeatedly attempt to close the Luggage compartment after it automatically re-opens, as the latch may overheat. If the cause of the automatic re-opening cannot be determined: Unlock all of the doors and the Luggage compartment with the Smart key, and make sure that all of the doors, the bonnet, and the Luggage compartment are closed properly; and then lock the vehicle again with the Smart key.

Entering the vehicle



E143948

To open the Luggage compartment or tailgate:

1. Press the Smart key button.
2. Press the interior release button.
3. Press the exterior release button if the vehicle is not locked.
4. To open the Luggage compartment or tailgate with the emergency key blade, first hold the Smart key, then slide and remove the cover to expose the emergency key.
5. Remove the emergency key blade.

6. Use the blade to remove the cap from the trim panel above the number plate. Insert the emergency key blade into the lock and turn clockwise to open the Luggage compartment.
If the security system is armed, the alarm will sound when the Luggage compartment is opened. To deactivate the alarm, press the vehicle's unlock button on the Smart key or press the engine **START/STOP** button with the Smart key inside the vehicle.

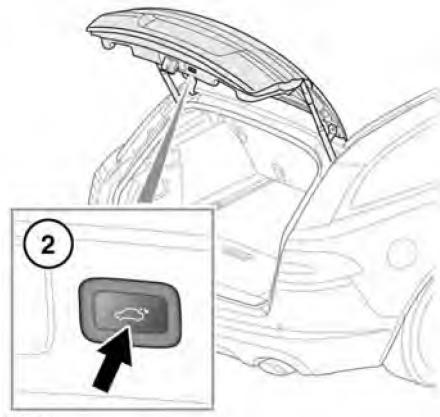
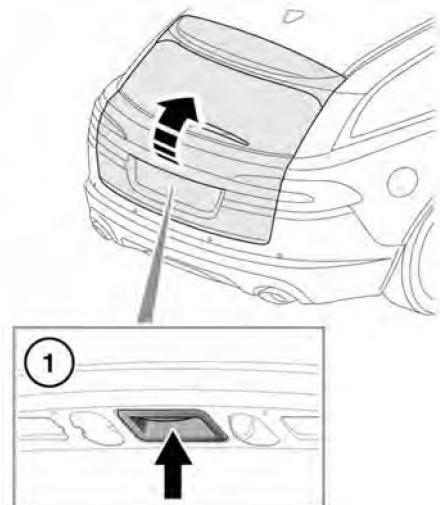
The Sportbrake luggage area roller blind can lift and close with the tailgate movement.

⚠ While the Luggage compartment or tailgate is open, the locking platform and latch are exposed. Do not manually close the latch as it may also automatically 'soft-close' and trap items or body parts.

⚠ Care should be taken when manually closing the Luggage compartment or tailgate to engage the latch, as the soft-close feature will automatically close the latch. Possible injury may occur.

To activate the soft-close feature, lower the Luggage compartment lid or tailgate onto the latch. It will then automatically move to the fully closed and latched position.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE POWERED TAILGATE



E153085

! Make sure there is a minimum space of 1.0 m (39 in) above the rear of the vehicle before operating the tailgate. Insufficient space may result in damage to the vehicle.

Entering the vehicle

! Do not operate the tailgate if a cycle rack is fitted to the tailgate. Remove any cycles and/or racks before operating the tailgate.

1. Press to open the powered tailgate.
2. Press and release to close the Powered tailgate.

The tailgate can also be opened using the following methods:

- The interior tailgate release button.
- The Smart key tailgate release button.

Note: The tailgate will not open if the vehicle is travelling at, or above, approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).

Note: When using the external release button (1), all of the doors must be unlocked and the transmission engaged in Park (P).

Note: If the Smart key is inadvertently left inside the Luggage compartment and the vehicle is locked and the alarm set, an audible warning will sound and the tailgate will re-open after 3 seconds.

After the tailgate has opened, it can be manually lowered. If the tailgate fails to open or close correctly, close it manually, then press the tailgate release button again.

Note: If a tailgate button is pressed while the tailgate is opening or closing, all movement will stop. However, if a button is pressed during the automatic locking stage, an open request will be ignored.

! **Before operating the tailgate, make sure that anyone in the vicinity does not have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Note that the automatic locking action does not incorporate object detection. Death or serious injury could occur, even with an object detection system.**

While the tailgate is open, the locking platform and latch are exposed. Do not manually close the latch as it may also automatically 'soft-close' and trap items or body parts.

Object detection while opening: If an object is detected that would interfere with the tailgate opening, tailgate movement will stop. Remove any obstructions and press the tailgate button again to open.

Object detection while closing: If an object is detected that would interfere with the tailgate closing, tailgate movement will stop and then reverse a short distance. An audible warning will be given to indicate a mislock. Remove any obstructions and press the tailgate button again to close.

TAILGATE OPENING HEIGHT

The maximum opening height can be set as required. This is useful in parking areas with low ceiling heights or just for ease of use.

1. Open the tailgate to the position which you want to set as the maximum height. Press either *external tailgate control to stop movement, or position the tailgate manually.
2. Make sure that the tailgate is stationary for at least 3 seconds.
3. To set the opening height, press and hold the close button on the tailgate until a chime sounds.
4. Close the tailgate, then open it again to check that it opens to the programmed height.

Note: If, after performing part 3 of the process, the tailgate closes automatically, the required height has not been set. Repeat the process making sure that all steps are adhered to.

To reset the opening height to maximum, repeat the process, but manually move it to the fully open position before pressing and holding the button.

The Powered tailgate may lose its position memory if there are multiple object detections or if battery voltage is low. Powered operation may be inhibited. To reset the tailgate:

1. Manually close the tailgate.
2. Press a tailgate release button.
3. Allow the tailgate to power fully open or to the previously set position.
4. Press and release the close button.
5. Allow the tailgate to power close fully.

The tailgate programmed position memory will now be restored.

REMOTE KEY FOB CARE

⚠ To prevent accidental operation, never leave the Smart key in the vehicle if children or animals are also left in the vehicle.

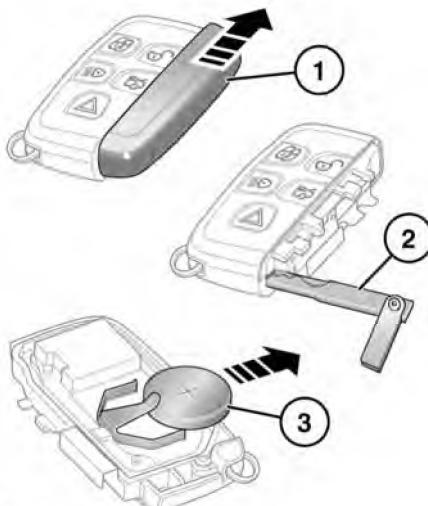
⚠ Do not expose to extremes of heat, dust, humidity, or fluids. Do not leave the transmitter exposed to direct sunlight.

The emergency key blade number is recorded on an attached label, which should be peeled off and affixed to the correct area in the Service book, supplied in the literature pack.

The operational range of the Smart key varies considerably, depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other devices.

Note: The radio frequency used by the Smart key may be used by other devices (e.g., medical equipment). This may prevent the Smart key from operating correctly.

REMOTE KEY FOB BATTERY REPLACEMENT



E150190

When the battery needs replacing, there will be a significant decrease in the effective range and the message **SMART KEY BATTERY LOW** is displayed in the Message centre.

To replace the battery:

1. Slide the cover in the direction of the arrow until a click is heard. Remove the cover.
2. Use the emergency key blade to separate the Smart key body.
3. Fit a new CR2032 type battery (available from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer), with the positive (+) side upwards.

Note: Use only a new, unused, battery when replacing the used battery.

Note: Avoid touching the new battery, as moisture/oil from your fingers can reduce the battery life and corrode the contacts.

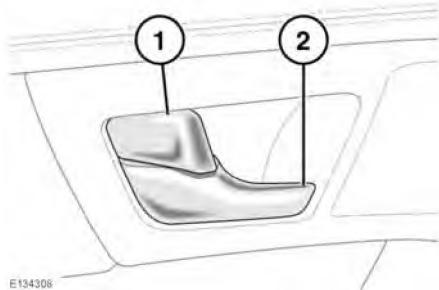
Refit the parts in the reverse order, making sure they click securely into place.

Entering the vehicle



Battery disposal: Used batteries must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer and/or a local authority.

DOOR LOCKS AND RELEASE LEVERS



1. Press the locking lever to lock the door. Pull the lever to unlock the door. Operating the locking lever on either front door will lock or unlock all closed doors.
2. Pull the release lever to open a door. If a rear door is locked, operating the lever will have no effect.

Note: If the car was locked using the Smart key, then operating the locking/release lever will only unlock/release that door and the alarm will sound.

Note: If the vehicle has been Double locked, then the interior door lock and release levers will not operate. The vehicle must be unlocked using the Smart key.

Note: When locking or unlocking, including child lock activation/deactivation, make sure that the door handles are not being operated. Operation of the door handles at this time may prevent the required locking/unlocking.

⚠ While a door, Luggage compartment or tailgate is open, the locking platform and latch are exposed. Do not manually close the latch as it may also automatically 'soft-close' and trap items or body parts.

SINGLE LOCKING

Press the lock button briefly. Single locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors and the Luggage compartment being opened from outside of the vehicle. The doors can be unlocked and opened from inside the vehicle. The hazard warning lamps will flash once as confirmation.

DOUBLE LOCKING

⚠ Never Double lock the vehicle with people, children, or pets inside. In the event of an emergency they would be unable to escape and the emergency services would be unable to release them quickly.

⚠ When the vehicle is Double locked, the doors cannot be opened, either from inside or outside the vehicle.

Press the lock button twice within 3 seconds. Double locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors and the Luggage compartment being unlocked or opened from inside or outside of the vehicle, except with the correct Smart key. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice (with a long second flash) and an audible warning will sound, as confirmation.



The audible warning can be enabled/disabled by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

LOCK CONFIRMATION

If you are uncertain whether the vehicle is locked and armed (either by Single or Double locking), press the lock button again. The hazard warning lamps will flash to indicate and confirm the current armed/disarmed status.

Note: If the vehicle is not already locked and armed, pressing the lock button will Single lock the vehicle. Press again to Double lock.

Exiting the vehicle

MISLOCK

If one of the doors, the bonnet, or the Luggage compartment are not shut fully when the vehicle is locked using the Smart key or by Keyless locking, the vehicle will not lock and 2 warning tones will sound. Check that all of the doors, the bonnet, and the Luggage compartment are closed properly and lock the vehicle again.

If 1 or more of the doors fails to lock properly when a lock attempt is made using the Smart key, 2 warning tones will sound and 1 or more of the doors may not be locked.

GLOBAL CLOSING

 **Make sure that no children, pets, or obstructions are in any open aperture before operating Global closing.**

Make sure that all of the doors are closed, then press and hold the lock button on the Smart key for 3 seconds, or press and hold the lock button on the exterior door handle. The vehicle will Single lock and the alarm will be fully armed immediately. After 3 seconds, all of the windows will close.

Note: If the button on the door handle is released before the windows have fully closed, the windows will stop closing.

Note: Global closing can be enabled/disabled via the **Windows/mirrors** menu from the **Security/Vehicle** menu on the Touch screen. See 65, **VEHICLE SETTINGS**.

KEYLESS LOCKING

 Remove all Smart keys and emergency key blades from the vehicle when it is left unattended. This will help to prevent the alarm from being disarmed and therefore, help to prevent theft.



The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container, or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including in a laptop bag), games console etc.

The vehicle will not lock automatically.

To Single lock the vehicle, press the button on the door handle once. The hazard warning lamps will flash once as confirmation (in some markets, an audible warning will sound).

To Double lock the vehicle, press the button twice within 3 seconds. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice (with a long second flash). In some markets, a double audible warning will sound.

Note: Keyless locking will only activate if all of the doors, the bonnet, and the Luggage compartment are closed, and the Smart key is outside the vehicle. If the above conditions are not met, 2 audible error warnings will sound.

FULL ALARM

 **No modifications or additions should be made to the Anti-theft system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.**

To set Full alarm protection, make sure that all of the windows and the sunroof are closed. On vehicles fitted with Double locking, press the lock button twice within 3 seconds. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice to confirm the alarm state and in some markets, an audible tone will sound.

Note: If the alarm is armed and a window or the sunroof are left open, the alarm may sound due to movement of air currents, detected by the intrusion sensors in the front interior light console.

Note: The intrusion sensors can be temporarily disabled, for the next time the vehicle is locked, via the **Security** menu from the **Security/Vehicle** menu on the Touch screen. See **65, VEHICLE SETTINGS**.

PERIMETER ALARM

To set Perimeter alarm protection, briefly press the lock button once. The hazard warning lamps will flash once to confirm the alarm state.

BATTERY-BACKED SOUNDER

In certain markets, a separate Battery-backed sounder is fitted. This device will sound the alarm if the vehicle's battery or the alarm sounder is disconnected when the security system is armed.

DEACTIVATING THE ALARM WHEN TRIGGERED

If the alarm has been triggered, it can be deactivated by any one of the following methods:

- Pressing the unlock button on the Smart key.
- Opening a door using Keyless entry.
- Pressing the **START/STOP** button with a valid Smart key present.

TIlt SENSOR

The Tilt sensor detects any change in the vehicle's angle to the ground. When the alarm is armed and the vehicle is Double locked, any change in the vehicle's angle will activate the tilt alarm.

Note: The Tilt sensor can be temporarily disabled, for the next time the vehicle is locked, via the **Security/Vehicle** settings menu on the Touch screen. See **65, VEHICLE SETTINGS**.

PASSIVE ARMING

This vehicle is fitted with a Passive arming feature which can, if enabled, automatically arm the Anti-theft system. Passive arming will automatically arm the Perimeter alarm system 60 seconds after the driver's door is closed, provided that all of the doors, the bonnet, and the Luggage compartment are closed, the ignition is switched off, and there are no valid Smart keys inside the vehicle.

Passive arming will not lock the vehicle, although access to the Luggage compartment via the interior or exterior release buttons will be prevented, and the fuel filler flap will be locked.

AUTOMATIC RELOCKING AND RE-ARMING OF THE ALARM

Automatic relock and re-arm is a feature which, if enabled, automatically relocks the vehicle and arms the Anti-theft system.

If the vehicle is in a locked and armed state, and the remote unlock button is pressed, but none of the doors or the Luggage compartment are opened within 1 minute, the vehicle will automatically relock all of the doors and the Luggage compartment and will re-arm the alarm system.

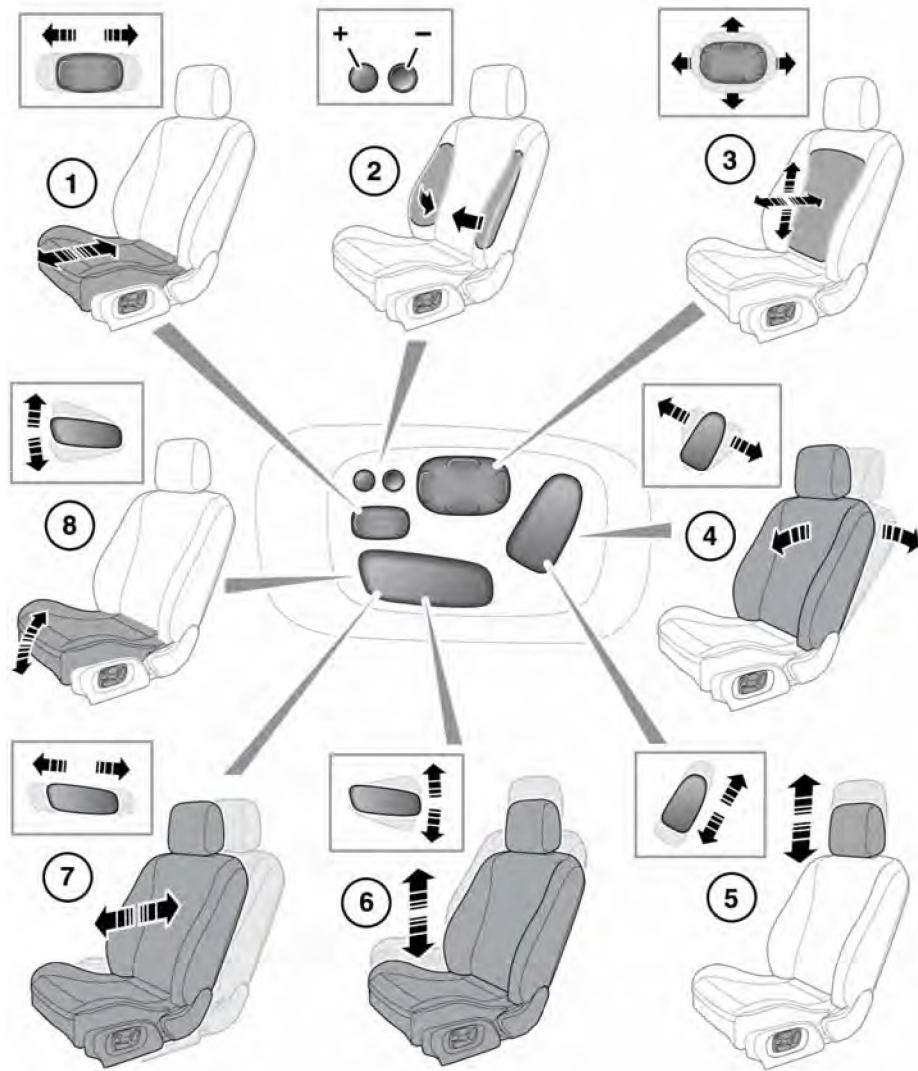
Note: Automatic relocking and arming will only relock and arm to the last locked and armed state.

SENSOR FAULTS

If the security systems detect a fault with one of the security sensors, 2 error tones will sound from the alarm after the vehicle is unlocked and disarmed. If this condition occurs, please visit your Dealer/Authorised Repairer for rectification.

Front seats

ELECTRIC SEATS



1. Cushion length adjustment.
2. Bolster adjustment:
 - Bolster inflate.
 - Bolster deflate.
3. Lumbar support adjustment.
4. Seatback angle adjustment.
5. Head restraint height adjustment.
6. Height adjustment.
7. Forward and rearward adjustment.
8. Cushion front tilt adjustment.

To adjust the seats, the Smart key must be in the vehicle and the ignition turned on.

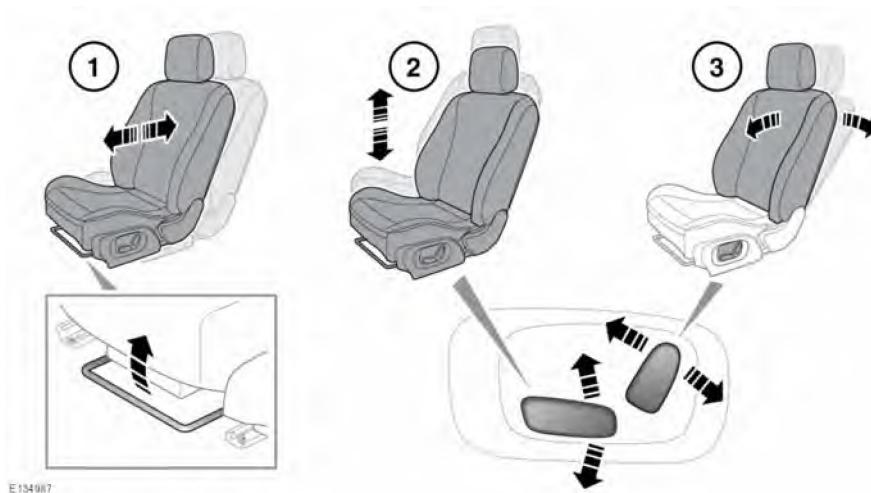
If an obstruction is encountered while the seat is in motion, the seat will stop moving and further movement will be restricted until reset.

To reset the seat:

1. Remove the obstruction.
2. Adjust the seat to the point where movement is restricted.
3. Press and hold the switch for at least 2 seconds to override the restriction.

Front seats

MANUAL SEATS

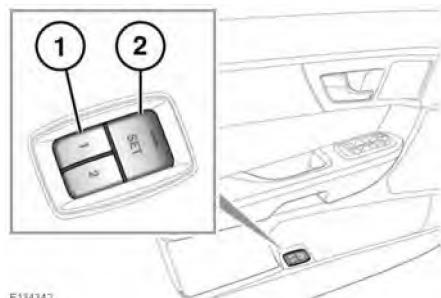


E134987

⚠ Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. Doing so could cause loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

1. Forward and rearward adjustment.
2. Height adjustment.
3. Seatback angle adjustment.

DRIVING POSITION MEMORY



E134342

1. Memory presets.
2. Memory set button.

Once you have adjusted the driver's seat, steering column and exterior mirrors, the vehicle can memorise these settings using the driver memory buttons. See **26, ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL** and see **54, EXTERIOR MIRRORS**.

Once the passenger seat has been adjusted as desired, these settings can be memorised using the passenger memory buttons.

1. Press the memory set button to activate the memory function.
2. Press one of the preset buttons within 5 seconds to memorise the current settings. For the driver's settings, **MEMORY 1 (or 2) SETTINGS SAVED** will be displayed in the Message centre, accompanied by an audible chime to confirm the settings have been memorised.

A seat position can only be memorised during the 5 second period.

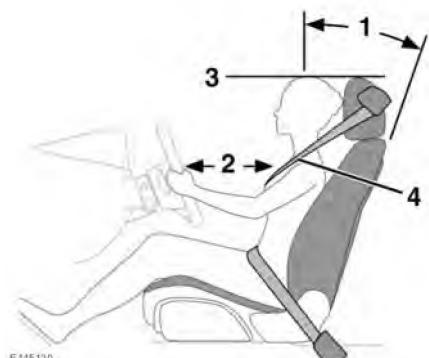
Any existing settings for a memory preset will be over-written when programming a memory position.

RECALLING A MEMORISED POSITION

Press the appropriate memory preset button (for the driver's settings, **MEMORY 1 (or 2)**)

SETTINGS RECALLED will be displayed in the Message centre).

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



The driver and front seat passenger must not ride with the seat fully reclined.



Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving.

The seat, head restraint, seat belt, and airbags, all contribute to the protection of the user.

Correct use of these components will give you greater protection, therefore, you should always observe the following points:

1. Sit in an upright position, with the base of your spine as far back as possible. To achieve optimum benefit of the seat belt in the event of an accident, do not recline the seat excessively.

2. Do not move the driver's seat too close to the steering wheel. Ideally, a minimum distance of 254 mm (10 inches) is recommended between the breastbone and the steering wheel airbag cover. Hold the steering wheel in the correct position, with your arms slightly bent.
3. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is the same height as the top of the head.
4. Position the seat belt so that it is midway between your neck and your shoulder. Fit the strap tightly across your hips, not across your stomach.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and enables you to maintain full control of the vehicle.

PASSENGER SEAT AWAY



This feature allows the fore and aft position of the front passenger seat to be adjusted from the driver's seat and rear passenger seats. Press the front of the button to move the seat forwards. Press the rear of the button to move the seat rearwards.

Rear seats

REAR SEAT SAFETY

 All vehicle occupants should be seated correctly and wear a seat belt at all times when the vehicle is in motion.

FOLDING AND RAISING THE REAR SEATS

 All items carried in the vehicle should be properly secured. See 73, LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS. Unsecured items can cause death or serious injury in the event of an impact or sudden manoeuvre.



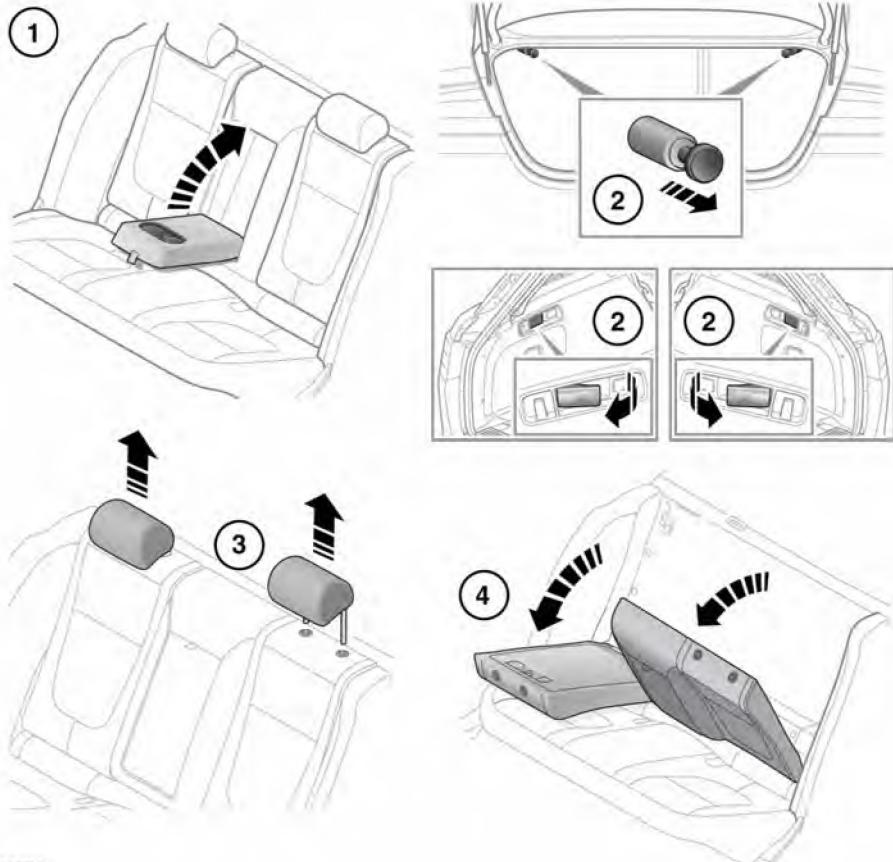
When using seat belts to restrain items other than occupants, make sure that the belts are not damaged or exposed to sharp edges.



Never allow passengers to travel in the Luggage compartment under any circumstances.



Always take note of safety warnings and labels attached to the rear seats. The labels give advice on safely folding and raising the seats.



E146651

Note: Sportbrake models have 2 seat release levers either side of the Luggage compartment.

1. Stow the rear armrest.
2. With the Luggage compartment open, pull the relevant seat release button or lever, located as shown (view from the rear of the vehicle with the Luggage compartment open).
3. Remove the head restraint(s) from the folded seatback(s) and store securely.

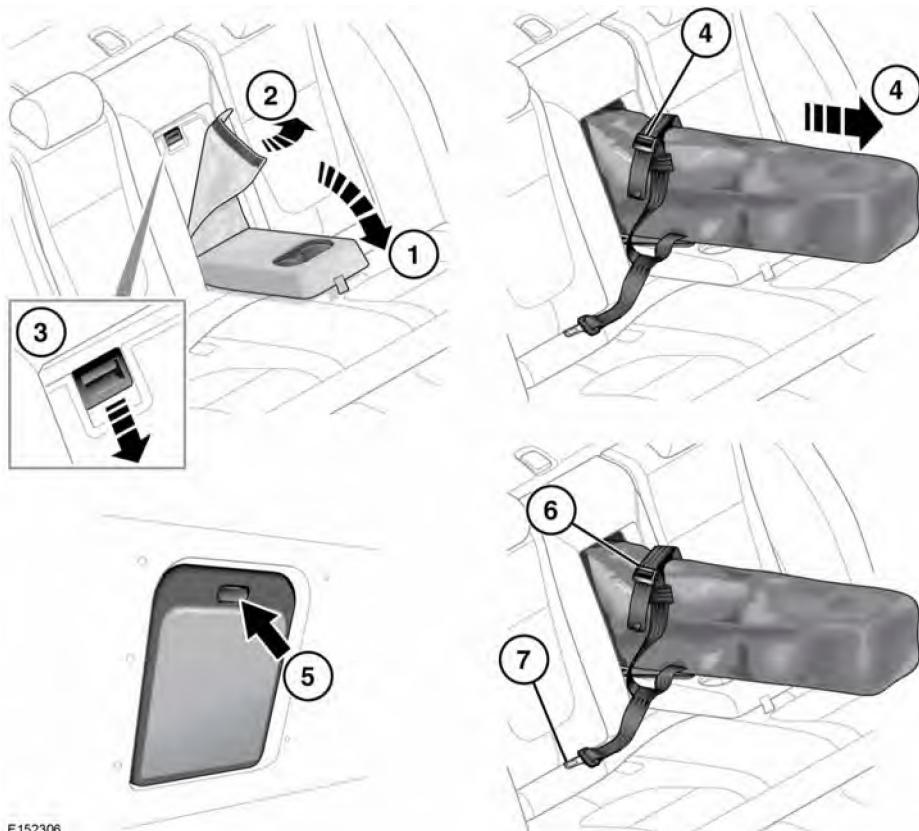
⚠ Make sure that the removed head restraints are stored securely. Never leave them loose in the vehicle, as they can cause serious injury or death in the event of an accident, heavy braking, or sudden manoeuvre.

4. Fully fold the seatback forwards and, if required, repeat the process for the second seat section.

Rear seats

-  Before folding a rear seat, make sure that the seat is not occupied and that no person has any part of their body on the seat cushion. The rear seatbacks are spring loaded and could cause personal injury or damage when released.
-  Make sure that when the seatbacks are raised, the seat belts are routed correctly in front of the seat and are not trapped by the seatbacks.
-  Make sure that when the seatbacks are raised, the locking mechanism is fully engaged.
-  Before driving, make sure that the head restraints are correctly fitted to the rear seats. See 24, REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS.

SKI HATCH



1. Fold down the armrest.
2. Pull the leather flap forward.
3. Press the catch down to release the inner hatch door and lower onto the arm rest.
4. Pull the ski bag from the hatch into the vehicle and loosen the retaining strap.
5. From the Luggage compartment, press the catch down to release the outer hatch door.

6. Push the skis through the hatch into the ski bag. Secure the skis by tightening the ski bag retaining strap.
7. Clip the strap connector into the centre rear seat belt buckle.

Head restraints

FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS

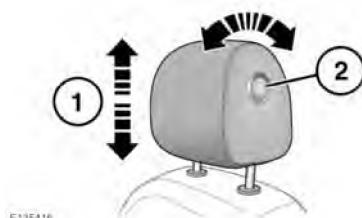
! Head restraints are designed to support the head, not the back of the neck. The head restraint must be positioned correctly to restrain rearward movement of the head in a collision or sudden stop.

! While stationary, adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centre line of the head. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

! It is possible to swivel the head restraint forwards or backwards. For greater protection in the event of a collision, the head restraint should be adjusted so that it is as close to the back of the head as is practical.

! Never adjust the head restraints while the vehicle is in motion.

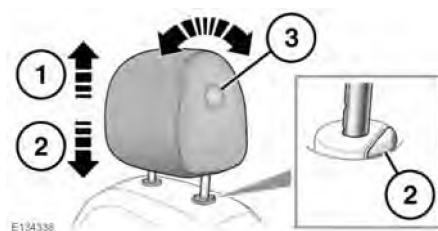
Powered head restraints



1. To adjust the height of the head restraint, see **16, ELECTRIC SEATS**.
2. To adjust the angle of the head restraint, press the locking button on the side of the head restraint and tilt to the desired position.

Note: It is not possible to remove powered head restraints.

Manual head restraints



! Do not drive or carry passengers with the head restraint removed from an occupied seat. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.

1. To raise, pull the head restraint upwards, it will click and lock in to position.
Note: Do not try to raise the head restraint further than the third adjustment position.
2. To lower, depress the locking collar and push down on the head restraint.
3. To adjust the angle of the head restraint, press the locking button on the side of the head restraint and tilt to the desired position.

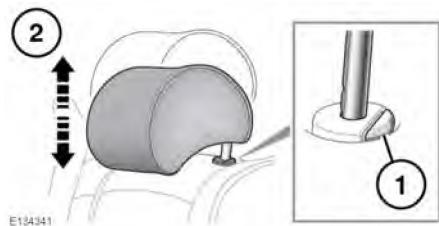
REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS

! Head restraints are designed to support the head, not the back of the neck. The head restraint must be positioned correctly to restrain rearward movement of the head in a collision or sudden stop.

! While stationary, adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centre line of the head. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.



Do not use the rear centre head restraint in its stowed (lowest) position. This position is to facilitate maximum rear visibility only.



1. If the head restraint is to be lowered, press and hold the locking collar, and then push the head restraint down to the required position.
2. Move the head restraint up or down to the required position. When raised, it will click and lock in to position.

Make sure the head restraint is refitted before the seat is used by a passenger.

To refit the head restraint, make sure it is facing the correct direction, insert the stems of the head restraint into the sockets and push it downwards until at least the first click.

HEAD RESTRAINT REMOVAL



Do not drive or carry passengers with the head restraint removed from an occupied seat. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.



Always store a removed head restraint securely. In the event of an accident, an unsecured object can cause serious injury or death.

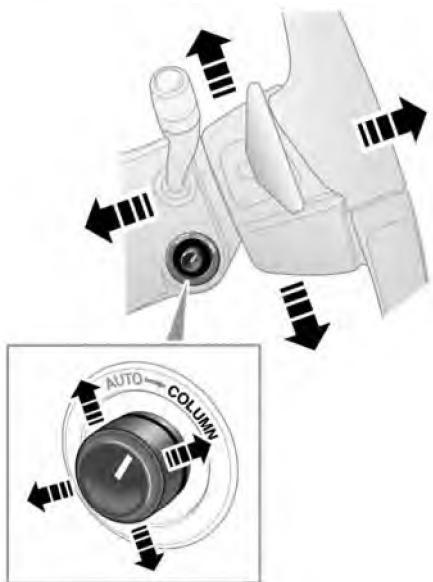
It is possible to remove head restraints from the rear seats and from front manual seats, (e.g., to enable installation of a child restraint), as follows:

- Raise the head restraint to its uppermost position and press the locking collar.
- Lift the head restraint out of the seat.

Note: For further details on correct child restraint installation, **31, CHILD SEATS**.

Steering wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



E143943



Never adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving.



Do not use steering wheel mounted security devices. Movement of the steering wheel in Exit and Entry mode, could result in damage to the vehicle or possible injury to the occupant.

The steering wheel can be adjusted for tilt and reach as follows:

- Move the control forwards or rearwards to adjust reach.
- Move the switch up or down to adjust tilt.

Two steering wheel positions can be stored and recalled, along with seat and exterior mirror positions, by the driving position memory. See **18, DRIVING POSITION MEMORY.**

ENTRY AND EXIT MODE

With the steering wheel adjustment control in the **AUTO** position, the steering wheel will move to provide easier entry and exit from the vehicle, as follows:

- Exit:** When the driver's door is opened, the steering wheel will move to the uppermost tilt position.
- Entry:** When the driver's door is closed and the ignition is turned on, the steering wheel will return to its previously selected driving position.

Note: If the steering wheel adjustment control is moved away from **AUTO** when the wheel is in the **Exit** position, the steering wheel will still move back to its previous driving position when the driver's door is closed and the ignition is switched on.

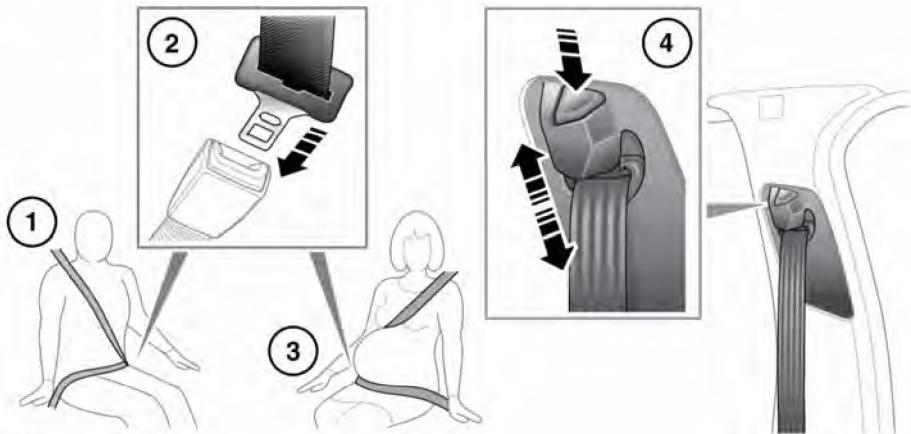
Note: If the wheel is manually adjusted during Entry or Exit operation, movement will stop.

HEATED STEERING WHEEL



Touch this icon on the Touch screen Home or Climate menu, to activate the Heated steering wheel. Press again to turn off.

USING THE SEAT BELTS



E142530

1. **Putting on a seat belt:** Draw the belt out smoothly, making sure that the belt height, the seat, and the occupant's position on the seat, are correct.



WARNING: Seatbelts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.



Seatbelts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.



Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.



Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.



Never wear just the lap belt or just the shoulder belt of a lap/shoulder diagonal seat belt. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous and may increase your risk of injury.



The occupants of the front seats should not travel with the seatback reclined excessively. Doing so will reduce the protection afforded by the seat belt.



Never place anything between you and the seat belt. It can be dangerous and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in preventing injury.

2. **Fastening a seat belt:** With the seat belt correctly positioned, place the metal tongue into the buckle nearest to you. Press it in until a click is heard. Make sure that all slack has been taken up by the retractor and the belt fits tightly across the hips.

Seat belts

To release the seat belt, press the red button.

Note: When releasing the seat belt, it is advisable to hold the belt before pressing the release button. This will prevent the belt from retracting too quickly.

3. Using seat belts during pregnancy:

 **Position the seat belt correctly for the safety of the mother and unborn child.** Never wear just the lap strap and never sit on the lap strap while using just the shoulder strap. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous and may increase your risk of serious injury in the event of an accident or during emergency braking.

 Never place anything between you and the seat belt in an attempt to cushion the impact in the event of an accident. It can be dangerous and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in preventing injury.

 **Position the lap strap comfortably across the hips beneath the abdomen.** Place the diagonal part of the seat belt between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen. Make sure that the seat belt is not slack or twisted.

4. Seat belt height adjustment:

- Press to release the catch.
- With the catch pressed, slide the mechanism up or down to the required height. Release the catch and make sure the locking mechanism has engaged.

- When correctly positioned, the seat belt should cross the collar bone at the mid-point between the neck, and end of your shoulder. Where possible, rear seat passengers should adjust their position on the seat, to enable the seat belt webbing to cross the shoulder without pressing on the neck.

 **Make sure that the height is correctly adjusted and the mechanism is locked in place before driving.**

 **Do not use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the seat belt system.**

 **WARNING:** No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

SEAT BELT SAFETY

 **Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water.**

 **The belt should be replaced if the webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.**

 **Never wear just the lap belt or just the shoulder belt of a lap/shoulder diagonal seat belt. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous and may increase your risk of injury.**

 **It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.**

-  **Do not carry hard, fragile or sharp items between your person and the seat belt.**
-  **Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every journey, no matter how short.**
-  **When using seat belts to restrain items other than occupants, take care to make sure that the belts are not damaged, or exposed to sharp edges.**
-  **The use of comfort clips, or devices that would create slackness in the seat belt system, is not advised.**

SEAT BELT CHECKS

Note: If the vehicle is parked on an incline, the seat belt mechanism may lock. This is a safety feature and the belt should be gently eased out from the upper anchorage.

The seat belts should be inspected regularly to check for fraying, cuts or wear to the webbing, and the condition and security of the mechanism, buckles, adjusters, and mounting points.

- With the seat belt fastened, give the webbing near the buckle a quick upward pull. The buckle must remain securely locked.
- With the seat belt unfastened, unreel the seat belt to the limit of its travel. Check that it unreels smoothly with no snatches or snags. Allow the belt to fully retract, again checking for smooth operation.
- Partially unreel the seat belt, then hold the tongue plate and give a quick forward pull. The mechanism must lock and prevent any further unreeling.

If any of the seat belts fail to meet those criteria, immediately contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

SEAT BELT REMINDER

The Seat belt reminder warns the driver when the seat belt of an occupied front seat is not fastened, or is unfastened during a journey.

The warning lamp will flash in conjunction with a warning chime. See 43, **WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS**.

ACTIVE SEAT BELTS

The Active seat belt system enhances front seat occupant support during extreme vehicle manoeuvres, such as understeer, oversteer, or high braking forces, by tensioning the seat belt.

Tension is released when the vehicle manoeuvre is completed. The occupant may notice a further slight increase in tension just prior to release of the seat belt, which is entirely normal.

In the unlikely event that tension is not released after a manoeuvre is completed, bring the vehicle to a safe stop. Unbuckle and re-buckle the seat belt, which should then extract and retract normally, before continuing with the journey.

-  **Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every journey, no matter how short.**

If the **ACTIVE SEAT BELTS UNAVAILABLE** message and the amber general warning symbol are displayed in the Message centre, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible. The vehicle is still safe to drive and the Active seat belt system will still function as standard seat belts.

Seat belts

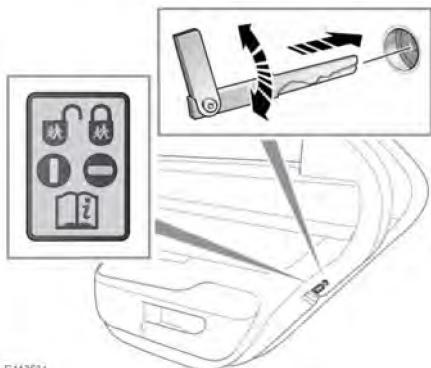
SEAT BELT PRE-TENSIONERS

The Seat belt pre-tensioners activate in conjunction with the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) to provide additional protection in the event of a severe frontal impact. They automatically reduce any slack in a seat belt to reduce forward movement of a front seat occupant.

 **The Seat belt pre-tensioners will activate only once and then must be replaced. Failure to replace them will reduce the effectiveness of the SRS in reducing the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.**

 **After any impact, have the seat belts and pre-tensioners checked and, if necessary, replaced by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.**

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



If children are to be carried in the rear seat positions, it is recommended that the rear door interior handles are disabled. To change the child lock settings:

1. Open the door to access the child safety lock.
2. Insert the emergency key into the slot and rotate a quarter of a turn, to enable or disable the interior door handle, as required.

See 4, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE.

CHILD SEATS

⚠ For optimum safety, children should travel in the rear of the vehicle at all times; front passenger seat travel is not recommended. However, if it is essential that a child travels in the front (not permitted in Australia), set the vehicle seat fully rearward and seat the child in an approved forward-facing child seat. Do not use a rear-facing child seat - an inflating airbag could impact with the seat and cause serious injury.

⚠ Do not use a forward-facing child seat until the child using it is above the minimum weight of 9 kg (20 lb.) and able to sit up unaided. Up to the age of two, a child's spine and neck are not sufficiently developed to avoid injury in a frontal impact.

⚠ Do not allow a baby or infant to be held or carried on the lap. The force of a crash can increase effective body weight by as much as thirty times, making it impossible to hold onto the child. At all times, children should be restrained in age and size appropriate child seats to reduce the risk of injury in a crash.

⚠ Children typically require the use of a booster seat appropriate to their age and size, thereby enabling the seat belts to be properly fitted, reducing the risk of injury in a crash. Children could be endangered in a crash if their child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle.

⚠ Do not use a child seat that hooks over the seatback. This type of seat cannot be satisfactorily secured and is unlikely to be safe for your child.

⚠ Brazil only. Children under the age of 10 must not sit in the front seats under any circumstances, even if a child seat or booster seat is used.

The seat belts fitted to your vehicle are designed for adults and larger children. For their safety, it is very important for all infants and children under 12 years of age to be restrained in a suitable child safety seat appropriate to their age and size.

Child safety

If it is essential that a child travels in the front passenger seat (and national legislation permits this), Jaguar recommends that the following preparations are made before fitting the child restraint.

- Adjust the front passenger seat fully rearwards.
- Adjust the lumbar support to its minimum support position.
- Adjust the seat cushion to its highest position. If cushion front tilt adjustment is possible, adjust it to its lowest position.
- Adjust the seatback to the fully upright position.
- Adjust the seat belt adjustable upper anchorage to its lowest position.

⚠ Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!



E132397



The symbol above, affixed to the front door post on the passenger side, and the label below, affixed to the sun-visor, warn against the use of a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, when a front passenger airbag is fitted and operational.



TOP/AD014A

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

CHILD RESTRAINT CHECK LIST

Every time a child travels in the vehicle, observe the following:

- Use appropriate child restraints.
- Carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the restraint system.
- Adjust the harnesses for every child on every journey.
- Make sure that all slack is removed from the adult seat belt.
- Always attach the top tether when installing an ISOFIX seat.
- Always check the security of the child restraint.
- Do not dress a child in bulky clothing, or place any objects/padding between the child and the restraint.
- Regularly check the fit and condition of child restraints. If the fit is poor, or wear/damage is visible, replace the restraint immediately.
- Set a good example - always wear your seat belt.



Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

CHILD SEAT POSITIONING



Information given within the table is correct at the time of going to press. However, availability of child restraints may change. Please consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for the latest recommendation.

Note: The information contained in the following table may not be applicable to all countries. If you are in any doubt regarding the type and fitment of child seats, seek advice from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Note: The legislation which governs how and where children should be carried when travelling in a vehicle, is subject to change. It is the responsibility of the driver to comply with all regulations in force.

Seating position	Mass group				
	0 = Up to 10 kg (22 lb) 0-9 months	0+ = Up to 13 kg (29 lb) 0-18 months	I = 9-18 kg (20-40 lb) 9 months to 4 years	II = 15-25 kg (33-55 lb) 4-9 years	III = 22-36 kg (49-80 lb) 8-12 years
Front passenger*	X	X	UF	U	U
Rear seats	U	U	U	U	U

- **U** = Suitable for universal category restraints approved for use in this mass group.
- **UF** = Suitable for forward-facing universal category restraints approved for use in this mass group.
- **X** = Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

* Jaguar recommend that the front passenger seat be positioned fully rearward, with the cushion adjusted to the highest position when installing child restraints in this position.

Note: Ages given are approximate. In case of doubt, the child's weight, not age, should be used when considering an appropriate child seat.



Crash statistics show that children are safest when properly restrained in a child or infant restraint system that is secured in a rear seating position.

Child safety

RECOMMENDED CHILD SEATS

Child size/age	Recommended seat
Groups 0 and 0+	Britax/Römer Baby Safe Plus
Group I	Britax/Römer Duo Plus
Group II and III	Britax/Römer Kid Plus

BOOSTER SEATS

In a situation where a child is too large to fit into a child safety seat, but is still too small to safely fit the 3-point belt properly, a booster seat is recommended for maximum safety. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for fitting and use, then adjust the seat belt to suit.

ISOFIX ANCHOR POINTS

⚠ Do not attempt to fit ISOFIX restraints to the centre rear seating position. The anchor bars are not designed to hold an ISOFIX restraint in this position.

⚠ If the restraint is not correctly anchored, there is a significant risk of injury to the child in the event of a collision or emergency braking.

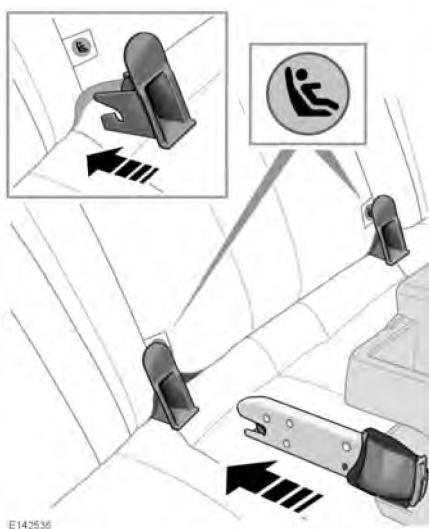
⚠ If removing a head restraint in order to fit a child restraint, always secure the head restraint when storing it.

⚠ WARNING: child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Both of the outer rear seat positions are equipped to accept ISOFIX restraints.



This symbol is shown, on a label sewn into the seats, to indicate the position of the ISOFIX lower anchorages.



To install an ISOFIX child seat:

1. Raise the head restraint on the relevant seat.
2. Locate the lower anchor bars, which are accessible through the gap between the seatback and the seat base. Insert the protective guides, supplied with the child seat, as shown. The insertion positions for the guides are identified by the ISOFIX labels.
3. Slide the child seat locking mechanism into the protective sleeves and onto the anchor bars.

4. Test the security of the child restraint. To do this, attempt to pull the restraint away from the vehicle's seat and twist the restraint from side to side. Even if the restraint appears secure, you should always check the anchor points visually to confirm correct attachment.

Note: Always make sure that if an upper tether is provided, it is fitted and tightened correctly.

Note: The information contained in the following table may not be applicable to all countries. If you are in any doubt regarding the type and fitment of child seats, seek advice from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Mass group	Size classes	Fixtures	Rear outboard seats
Carrycot	F/G	ISO L1/L2	X
0 = Up to 10 kg (22 lb.) 0 to 9 months	E	ISO R1	IL*
0+ = Up to 13 kg (29 lb.) 0 to 18 months	C/D/E	ISO R1/R2/R3	IL*
I = 9 to 18 kg (20 to 40 lb.) 9 months to 4 years	C/D A/B1/B	ISO R2/R3 ISO F2/F2X/F3	X IUF
II = 15 to 25 kg (33 to 55 lb.) 4 to 9 years	-	N/A	N/A
III = 22 to 36 kg (49 to 80 lb.) 8 to 12 years	-	N/A	N/A

- IUF** = Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraint systems of universal category, approved for use in this mass group.
- IL** = These ISOFIX child restraint systems are of the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories.
- X** = Not suitable for child restraint fitment in this mass group.
- * = Child seat suitable for use in these locations is the Britax/Römer Baby Safe Plus.

Note: Ages given are approximate. In case of doubt, the child's weight, not age, should be used when considering an appropriate child seat.

INSTALLING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS

 Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

 Always follow the child seat or restraint system manufacturer's instructions when fitting tether straps.

 When fitting a child seat or restraint system, always pass the tether strap over the top of the seat back and beneath the head restraint.

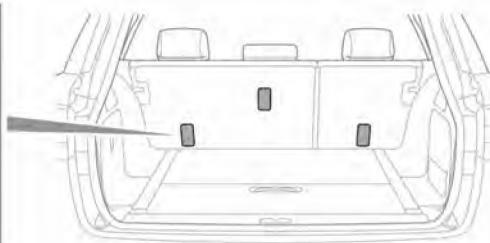
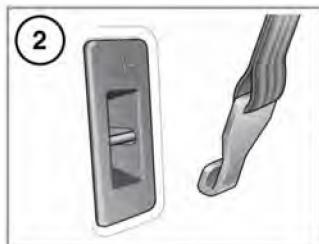
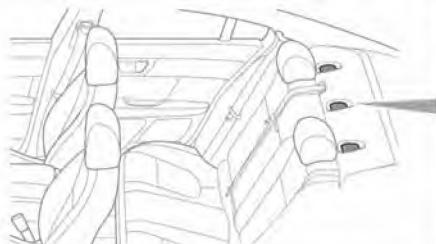
Child safety



If a child seat or restraint system is to be fitted to the centre seating position, the centre armrest must be in the stowed position (folded into the seat).

The vehicle may be equipped with anchorage points on the back of the second row seat frames. These should be used to attach straps from child seats or restraint systems.

Always fit the upper tether anchorage and tighten correctly.



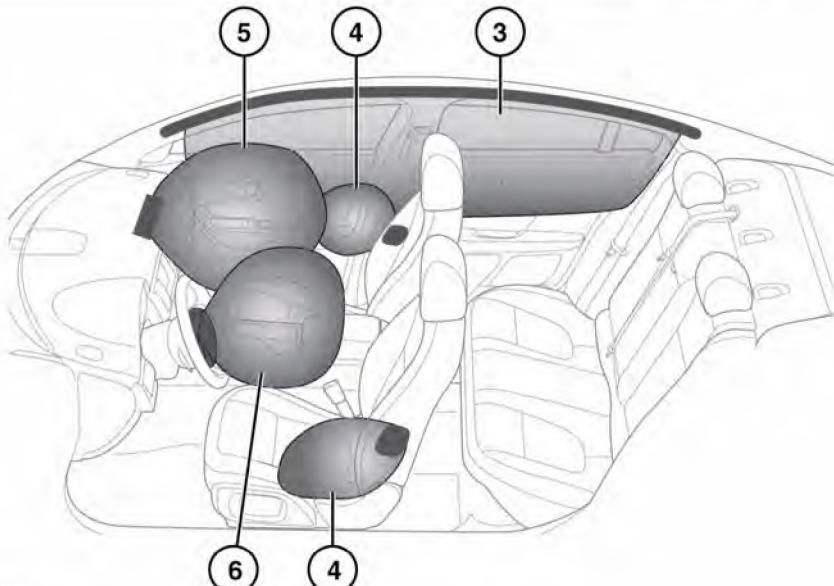
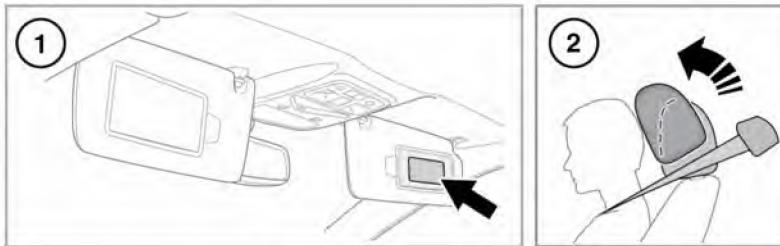
E161647

1. Saloon tether anchorage points.
2. Sportbrake tether anchorage points.

- Install the child restraint securely in 1 of the rear seating positions.
- Pass the tether strap over the seatback and beneath the head restraint.
- Attach the tether strap hook to the tether anchor point. Make sure that the tether strap hook is facing the correct way.
- Tighten the tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

If a head restraint has been removed to fit a child seat, make sure the head restraint is refitted before the seat is used by a passenger. See 25, **HEAD RESTRAINT REMOVAL**.

AIRBAGS AND ACTIVE HEAD RESTRAINTS



1. Airbag warning information is printed on the passenger sun visor.
2. Both front seats are equipped with Active Head Restraints (AHR), which reduce the risk of neck and spinal injury (whiplash) in the event of a rear impact, by moving the head restraint upwards and forwards, supporting the occupant's head.

After activation, the whiplash protection mechanism resets automatically and does not need to be replaced.

3. The curtain airbags may deflate at a slower rate than the front or side airbags, to afford prolonged protection.
4. Seat-mounted side airbags.
5. Front passenger airbag.
6. Driver's airbag.

Note: The general location of airbags fitted to the vehicle are marked by the word AIRBAG.

Always contact a Dealer/Authorised repairer if:

- An airbag inflates.
- The front or sides of the vehicle are damaged.
- Any part of the airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) shows signs of cracking or damage, including trim covering the airbags.

FRONT AIRBAGS

The front passenger and driver airbags are able to deploy in 2 stages, depending on the severity of the frontal impact. In a severe impact, the airbags inflate fully to offer maximum protection. In a lesser impact, full deployment is not required, so the airbags are partially inflated.

SIDE AND CURTAIN AIRBAGS

The seat-mounted side airbags are designed to protect the thorax region of the torso and will deploy only in the event of a side impact and then, only on the side of the impact.

The curtain airbags are deployed in side impacts, providing greater protection from serious head injuries. They deflate at a slower rate than the front or side airbags.

AIRBAG OPERATION

⚠ For the airbags to operate correctly, the roof lining and door post trims must be in good condition, correctly fitted, and free from obstruction. Any damage, wear, or incorrect fitment should be referred to a Dealer/Authorised repairer as soon as possible for examination and repair.



Do not allow passengers to obstruct the operation of the airbags by placing any part of their person or any objects in contact with, or close to, an airbag module. Only use approved accessories (e.g., seat covers).



Make sure that a gap is maintained between the side of the vehicle, and the head and torso. This will enable unobstructed inflation of the curtain and seat-mounted side airbags.



Airbags inflate at high speeds. To minimise the risk of injury, make sure that all vehicle occupants wear correctly positioned seat belts, sit correctly in the seats, and position the seats as far back as is practical.



Airbag inflation takes place instantaneously and cannot protect against the effects of secondary impacts. Under these circumstances, the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.



Phone systems should only be installed by qualified persons familiar with the operation of, and requirements for, vehicles fitted with SRS. If you are in any doubt, seek advice from your Dealer/Authorised repairer.

Airbag deployment is dependent on the rate at which the passenger compartment changes velocity following the collision. Circumstances affecting different collisions (vehicle speed, angle of impact, type and size of object hit, etc.), vary considerably and will affect the rate of deceleration accordingly.

The SRS is not designed to operate as a result of:

- Rear impacts.
- Minor front impacts.
- Minor side impacts.

- Heavy braking.
- Driving over bumps and pot holes.

Therefore, it follows that considerable superficial damage to the vehicle can occur, without causing the airbags to deploy.

Airbags cannot deploy correctly if they are obstructed. Examples of obstructions are:

- Any part of an occupant's body in contact with, or close to, an airbag cover.
- Objects placed on, or close to, an airbag cover.
- Clothing, sun screens, or other material hanging from grab handles.
- Clothing, cushions, or other material, covering seat-mounted airbags.
- Seat covers which are not approved by Jaguar, or specifically designed for use with seat-mounted airbags.

This list is not exhaustive, and it remains the responsibility of the driver and passengers to make sure that the airbags are not obstructed in any way.

⚠️ High speed impacts may cause serious injury or death, irrespective of safety features fitted to a vehicle.

⚠️ The airbag SRS cannot provide protection in some types of impact. Under these circumstances, the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.

AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT EFFECTS

⚠️ When an airbag inflates, a fine powder is released. This is normal and not an indication of a malfunction. The powder may cause irritation to the skin and should be thoroughly flushed from eyes and any cuts or abrasions.

⚠️ Airbag deployment is accompanied by a very loud noise which may cause discomfort and temporary loss of hearing.

⚠️ After inflation, some airbag components will be very hot. Do not touch the airbag components until they have cooled sufficiently.

AIRBAG WARNING LAMP

The Airbag warning lamp is mounted in the Instrument panel and will illuminate as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on.

See 43, WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS.

If any of the following warning lamp conditions occur, the vehicle should be checked by your Dealer/Authorised repairer immediately.

- The warning lamp fails to illuminate when the **START/STOP** button is initially switched on.
- The warning lamp fails to extinguish within 6 seconds of the **START/STOP** button being switched on.
- The warning lamp illuminates at any time, other than during the bulb check.

When the ignition is turned on, a diagnostic control unit monitors the readiness of the system's electrical circuits. The elements of the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) components include:

- SRS warning indicator.
- Rotary coupler.
- Airbag modules.
- Seat belt pre-tensioners (front seat belts).
- Airbag diagnostic control unit.
- Crash sensors.
- Airbag wiring harnesses.
- Front seat buckle switches.

- Front seat track position sensor.

AIRBAG SERVICE INFORMATION

-  **Do not attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with, any part of the SRS. This includes wiring or components in the vicinity of SRS components. Doing so may cause the system to trigger or render the system inoperative.**
-  **Do not use any electrical test equipment or devices in the vicinity of SRS components or wiring. Doing so may cause the system to trigger, or render the system inoperative.**

All of the following operations should only be carried out by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer, or suitably qualified person:

- Removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any SRS components.
- Installation of electrical, or electronic, equipment and accessories.
- Modification to the front or sides of the vehicle's exterior.
- Attachment of accessories to the front or sides of the vehicle.

DISABILITY MODIFICATIONS

Occupants with disabilities which may require modification of the vehicle, must contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer before any modifications are made.

WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES

- ⚠ Do not ignore warning messages, take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in serious damage to the vehicle.**
- ⚠ If the message is suppressed, an amber or red warning icon will remain illuminated until the cause of the message is rectified.**

For information regarding the individual messages, their meanings, and any action required, please refer to the relevant section within this handbook.

If more than 1 message is active in the Message centre, each will be displayed in turn for 2 seconds in order of priority.

Note: *Messages are displayed in order of importance, with critical warning messages being the highest priority.*

Warning messages may be accompanied by an audible warning, and the message text may have the handbook symbol next to it. Warning messages are displayed until the condition causing the fault is rectified.

TRIP COMPUTER

The computer memory stores data for a journey, or a series of journeys, until it is reset to zero.

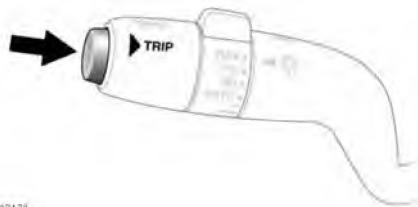
There are 3 trip memories available via the Touch screen, **Trip A**, **Trip B** and **Trip Auto**.

To select a trip memory from the Touch screen, go to **Set-up** and then **Trip computer**.

Select a trip memory. Select **Reset** to zero the Trip computer readings. Select **Units** to switch between imperial and metric measurements.

Trip computer information is displayed in the Instrument panel.

USING THE TRIP COMPUTER



A short press (1 second or less) or a series of short presses of the **TRIP** button (arrowed) will change the Trip computer display. The options available are:

- Trip distance **A**, **B** and **Auto**.
- Range available from remaining fuel.
- Trip average fuel consumption.
- Trip average speed.
- Oil level (not 2.0 litre petrol).

To reset the displayed trip data, press and hold the **TRIP** button.

It is not possible to manually reset the **Auto** memory. This resets automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

TRIP DISTANCE

Distance travelled since the last memory reset. The maximum trip reading is 9999.9 (kilometres or miles). The computer will automatically reset to zero if this distance is exceeded.

RANGE

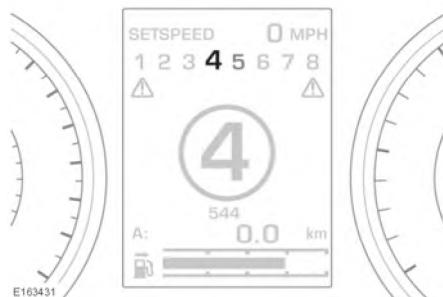
This shows the predicted distance (kilometres or miles) that the vehicle should travel on the remaining fuel, assuming fuel consumption stays constant.

Instrument panel

METRIC/IMPERIAL/MIXED DISPLAY

The Trip computer readings can be changed between metric, imperial, and mixed units in the **Trip Computer** menu within the **Set-up** menu. See **64, TOUCH SCREEN SETUP**.

Note: Temperature display can be changed between **°C** (Celsius) and **°F** (Fahrenheit) independently of metric or imperial units.



SERVICE INTERVAL INDICATOR

An approaching service interval will be notified to the driver via the Message centre, as a distance remaining until the service is due. Once the distance is exceeded, **SERVICE REQUIRED** is displayed in the Message centre.

! If no Service interval indicator is displayed during the vehicle's service cycle, make sure the vehicle is serviced in accordance with the intervals, as stated in the relevant Service Interval Plan, which is supplied in the vehicle's literature pack.



When transmission **S** is selected and Dynamic mode is used, transmission up-shifts are fully controlled by the driver. This means that the transmission will not change up a gear automatically, even when the engine's revolution speed limit is reached.

GEAR SHIFT (GREEN)

The currently selected gear is displayed in a large type size, within a circle, in the middle of the Message centre.

Above this is the Gear shift indicator. The currently selected gear will be displayed in a larger size than the other numbers in the row. When transmission **S** is selected, the next gear up will illuminate green at the recommended up-shift gear change point.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

RED warning lamps are for primary warnings. A primary warning must be investigated immediately, seek qualified assistance if necessary.

AMBER and YELLOW warning lamps are for secondary warnings. Some indicate that a vehicle's system is in operation, others indicate that the driver must take action and then seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

Other warning lamps within the Instrument panel indicate system status, such as blue for main beam and green for direction indicators, when in operation.

LAMP CHECK

A warning lamp bulb check is initiated when the ignition system is switched on and lasts for 3 seconds (except for the airbag warning lamp which will remain on for 6 seconds). If any warning lamp remains on after this period, investigate the cause before driving.

Some warning lamps have associated messages displayed on the Message centre.

Note: Not all warning lamps are included in the check (e.g., high beam headlamps and direction indicators).

CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)



Illuminates when a critical warning message is available in the Message centre.

GENERAL WARNING/INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)



Illuminates when a non-critical warning message or an information message is available in the Message centre.

BRAKE (RED)

⚠ **Do not drive if the message LOW BRAKE FLUID is displayed. Check the brake fluid level and top up, as necessary. If necessary, seek qualified assistance before continuing.**



Illuminates when the ignition is on and the Electric parking brake (EPB) is applied, and/or the brake fluid is low.

The warning lamp will also illuminate when there is a fault with the Electronic brakeforce distribution (EBD) system.

If the warning lamp is on and there are no associated messages, it means that the EPB is on.

If the warning lamp is illuminated and the message **PARK BRAKE ON** is displayed, it means that the EPB is applied, but the vehicle is moving. Release the EPB, or stop the vehicle when it is safe to do so.

If the lamp is illuminated and the message **LOW BRAKE FLUID** is displayed, loss of braking in one or both brake circuits may be imminent. Stop the vehicle gently and check and top up the brake fluid reservoir, using the recommended fluid. If the warning message remains, do not drive the vehicle until the brake fault is rectified. Seek qualified assistance before continuing.

If the lamp illuminates and the message **EBD FAULT** is displayed in the Message centre, a fault with the EBD system is indicated. The braking system will still function, but without EBD assistance.

Have the fault rectified by your Dealer/ Authorised Repairer.

Warning lamps

SEAT BELT (RED)



The warning lamp stays illuminated when the ignition is on and:

- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- Or a passenger is sitting in the front seat and their seat belt is not fastened.

The lamp should extinguish when the relevant seat belt is fastened.

The Seat belt reminder feature, which uses the same warning lamp as the Seat belt warning, provides reminders to the driver that a seat belt is unbuckled.

If the vehicle is moving at or above 16 km/h (10 mph) and the seat belt of an occupied front seat is not fastened, the warning lamp will flash.

The flashing will last for 10 seconds and then repeat every 10 seconds for approximately 5 minutes, or until the belt(s) is fastened or the vehicle stops.

If the warning lamp stays illuminated with the seat belt(s) fastened, seek qualified assistance as soon as possible. It is safe to drive the vehicle with the lamp illuminated, provided that the seat belt(s) is properly fastened.

Make sure that all occupants fasten their seat belt before driving.

Note: Objects on the front passenger seat may activate the Seat belt reminder. It is recommended that any objects placed on the front passenger seat are secured using the seat belt. See 27, **USING THE SEAT BELTS**.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS) (AMBER)



If the ABS and brake warning lamps are illuminated at the same time, do not drive the vehicle until the fault is rectified. Seek qualified assistance immediately.



Illuminates if a fault has been detected in the ABS (accompanied by a warning message in the Message centre).

The brake system will continue to function, but without ABS assistance.

If the warning lamp illuminates or stays illuminated after the bulb check cycle, seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

ENGINE/TRANSMISSION (AMBER)



Illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp illuminates when the engine is running, there is an emissions related fault with the engine or transmission. The vehicle can be driven but may enter limp-home mode with the possibility of reduced performance. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

If the warning lamp flashes while the engine is running, reduce speed and seek qualified assistance urgently.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)



Flashes when DSC is active.

If there is a fault, this warning lamp will illuminate in the Instrument panel and the Message centre will display **DSC NOT AVAILABLE**.

The vehicle can still be driven, but the DSC system will not activate under wheel spin or slide conditions. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)



Illuminates when DSC is switched off. A chime will also sound and the message **DSC OFF** is displayed in the Message centre.

If Trac DSC is selected, the warning lamp will also illuminate and the message **TRAC DSC** is displayed for 4 seconds.

REAR FOG LAMP (AMBER)



Illuminates when the rear fog lamps are switched on.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (AMBER)



Illuminates when Adaptive cruise control is active, to indicate that the vehicle is in Follow mode.

FORWARD ALERT (AMBER)



Illuminates when Forward alert is active.

AIRBAG (AMBER)



Illuminates if the airbag system develops a fault. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

AUTOMATIC SPEED LIMITER (AMBER)



Illuminates when the Automatic speed limiter is active.

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM (AMBER)



Illuminates when there is a system fault. The headlamps will still operate, but without this feature operating correctly. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (YELLOW)



Illuminates when 1 or more tyres are significantly under-inflated. The vehicle should be stopped as soon as possible and the tyres checked and inflated to the recommended pressure.

HIGH BEAM (BLUE)



Illuminates when the high beam headlamps are switched on or flashed.

HIGH BEAM ASSIST (GREEN)



Illuminates when High beam assist has switched on the high beams.

INTELLIGENT STOP/START (GREEN)



Illuminates when the engine is shut down by the Intelligent stop/start system.

Note: Other warnings normally associated with an engine shutdown, for example, the ignition warning lamp, do not illuminate during an engine shutdown by the Intelligent stop/start system.

Warning lamps

SIDE LAMPS (GREEN)



Illuminates when the side lamps are switched on.

DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)

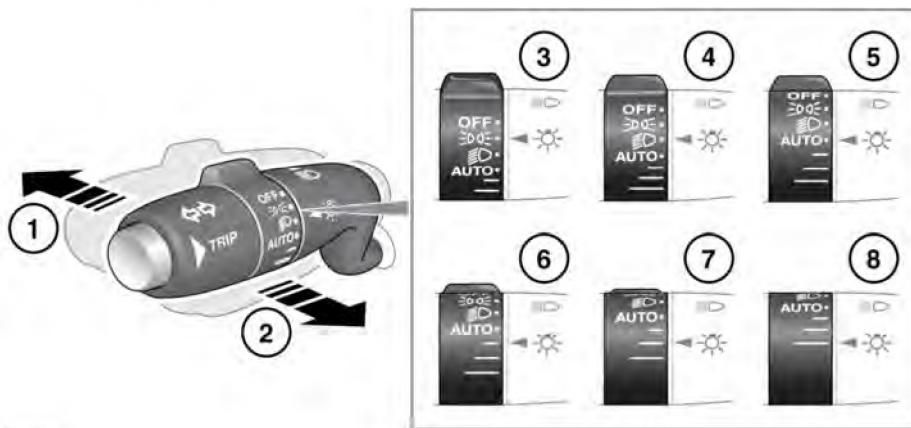


The appropriate green lamp will flash when the column stalk is moved up or down to signal a turn.

If a direction signal is selected, and the bulb has failed, the audible ticking and green lamp will operate at twice the normal rate.

When the hazard warning lamps are activated, both lamps will flash.

LIGHTING CONTROL



1. With the headlamps on, push the control away from the steering wheel to select high beam. The blue warning indicator in the Instrument panel will illuminate.
2. Pull the control towards the steering wheel and release to flash the high beam. The high beam will remain on for as long as the control is held.
3. Side lamps.
4. Headlamps.

Note: If the rotary control is moved to the **OFF** position with high beam selected, high beam will illuminate when the headlamps are turned on again.

5. **AUTO.** With the ignition on, if ambient light fades, the side lamps and headlamps will switch on automatically. If ambient light then increases, the side lamps and headlamps automatically switch off.

Note: A light sensor, on the front of the facia, monitors ambient light levels for **AUTO** lamps operation. Keep the windscreen clean and make sure the sensor is not obscured. Obstructing the light in this area may lead to unwanted **AUTO** lamps operation.

Note: If the **AUTO** lamps are turned off, but the light sensors detect low exterior light levels, the warning **LIGHTS ARE OFF** is displayed in the Message centre.

6. Exit delay of 30 seconds.
7. Exit delay of 60 seconds.
8. Exit delay of 120 seconds.

Note: Press the headlamp button on the Smart key to switch off the headlamps during an Exit delay period.

DIRECTION INDICATORS

In addition to normal operation, the indicators will operate 3 times (e.g., to indicate a lane change) if the stalk is briefly pushed up or down.

Exterior lights

DAYLIGHT RUNNING LAMPS

With the rotary control in the **OFF** or **AUTO** position, the Daylight running lamps will switch on automatically with the following conditions:

- The ignition is on.
- The engine is running.
- The gear selector is in **D** or **R** position - market dependent.

Note: *The lamps remain on if the gear selector is subsequently moved to **N**.*

- The Parking brake is not applied (is released) - market dependent.

APPROACH LAMPS

The headlamps can be illuminated remotely for a programmed length of time, by pressing the headlamp button on the Smart key. See 4, **UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE**. Press the button again to switch off.

Note: *In some markets, a second press will illuminate the reverse lamps and a third press is required to turn the lamps off.*

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM (AFS)

These lamps broaden the beam of the headlamps when cornering in different circumstances.

Static bending lamps: The static bending lamps operate when necessary, to provide an even broader light spread.

Cornering lamps: At speeds of up to 40 km/h (25 mph), to provide improved visibility at junctions, the system switches on the lamp if it has received an input from the vehicle's direction indicator. Only the lamp on the same side as the operating indicator illuminates. The lamp will self cancel after 3 minutes of continuous operation.

WINDSCREEN WIPER DETECTION

This function only operates when **AUTO** lamps is selected. The side lamps, tail lamps, and headlamps will switch on automatically if the windscreens wipers are operated for 20 wipes or more. Once the windscreens wipers are switched off, the side lamps, tail lamps, and headlamps will automatically switch off 4 minutes later.

HIGH BEAM ASSIST

This feature automatically selects and deselects high beam, under specific conditions of road lighting and in the absence of other vehicle's lights.

High beam assist is active only when:

- the lighting control is in the central position and the rotary control is in the **AUTO** position.
- ambient light drops below a predetermined level.
- vehicle speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph). The system will deactivate when the vehicle's speed drops below 24 km/h (15 mph).

Note: *High beam assist does not operate when transmission **R** is selected.*

To manually select high beam, move the lighting control to the high beam position as normal. To return to High beam assist, move the lighting control back to the central position.

To manually override to low beam from High beam assist, pull the lighting control to the flash position. High beam assist will be cancelled. To return to High beam assist, push the lighting control to the high beam position and then return it to the central position.

When High beam assist is enabled, the warning lamp will illuminate. See 43, **WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS**.

Note: The following may affect the operation of High beam assist:

- Highly reflective road signs.
- Dimly lit road users, for example, cyclists and pedestrians.
- Adverse weather conditions, for example, fog, heavy rain, and snow.
- Dirty or obscured sensor.
- Dirty, damaged, or misted windscreen.
- Oncoming vehicles partially obscured by a central motorway barrier.

To turn off High beam assist, turn the rotary control from **AUTO** to headlamps on.

High beam assist can be disabled/enabled via the **Security/Vehicle** settings menu of the Touch screen. See **64, TOUCH SCREEN SETUP**.

Note: Make sure that the forward-facing sensor on the back of the rear-view mirror is not blocked or obstructed.

HEADLAMPS - DRIVING ABROAD

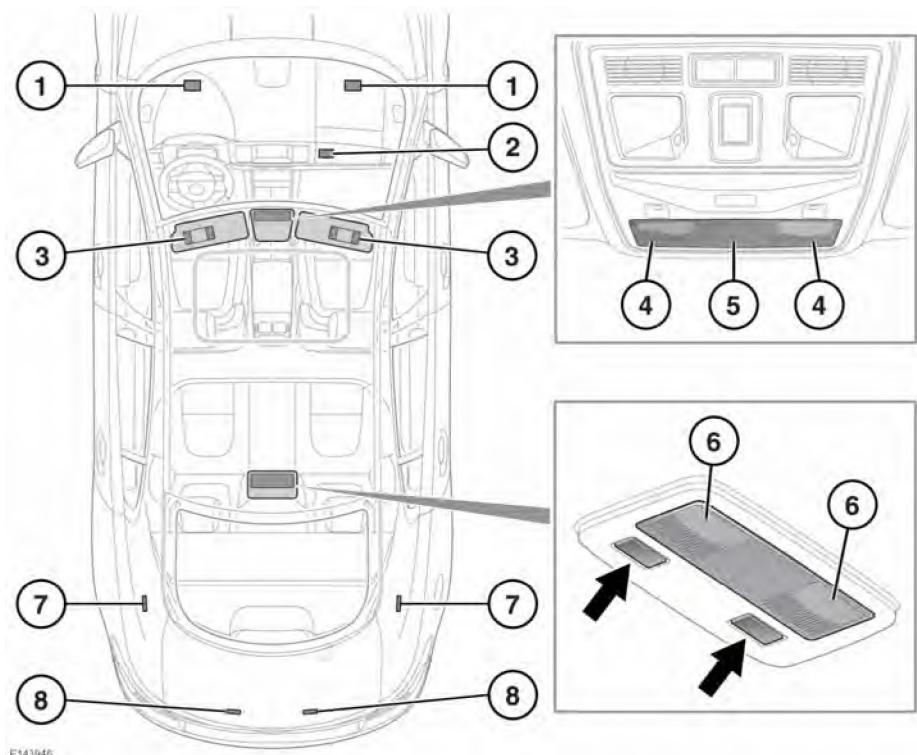
The headlamp beam pattern is suitable for driving on either side of the road. There is no need for any mechanical adjustment or external decals.

HEADLAMPS - CONDENSATION

In certain circumstances, misting may occur on the inside of a lamp lens. This is caused by natural changes in environmental conditions. This misting is not detrimental to lamp performance and will clear during normal usage.

Interior lights

INTERIOR LIGHTS

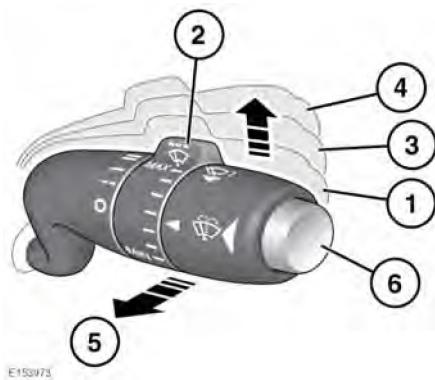


1. Front seat footwell illumination.
2. Glove box lamp.
3. Vanity mirror lamps.
4. Front reading lamps: Touch the lens briefly to switch on/off.
5. Front interior courtesy lamp: Illuminates when the doors are unlocked and extinguishes 30 seconds after all of the doors are closed or when the vehicle is locked.

The lamps are operated by proximity sensors. Move your finger close to (or touch) the appropriate lens to switch on/off. Touch the lens for 2 seconds to switch automatic illumination on/off (**Manual mode** or **Auto mode** is displayed in the Message centre accordingly).

6. Rear interior and reading lamps: Switch on automatically when the doors are opened. Press the appropriate switch to activate a lamp manually.
7. Luggage compartment lamps: Press the switch briefly to switch on/off.
8. Rear door lamps. Sportbrake only.

WIPER OPERATION



1. Automatic rain sensing mode (AUTO): The front wipers will respond and adapt automatically to the ambient rain conditions, selecting the appropriate wiper frequency for the prevailing conditions.
2. Rotate the collar to adjust the sensitivity of the Automatic rain sensing mode when position (1) is selected. The higher the sensitivity position, the more responsive the wipers will become.
When AUTO position is selected, or when sensitivity is increased, the wipers will perform a single wipe.
3. Low speed continuous wipe.
4. High speed continuous wipe.

- ! Make sure the wipers are switched off before entering a car wash. If the Automatic rain sensing mode operates during the car washing process, damage may occur to the wiper mechanism.
- ! Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreens.
- ! In freezing or very hot conditions, make sure that the wipers have not stuck to the windscreens before operating.

! Remove any snow, ice, or frost from the windscreens, around the wiper arms and blades, and the screen scuttle, before operating the wipers.

5. Pull the control towards the driver for a single wipe, or hold for further continuous wipes.
6. Windscreen wash/wipe: Press and release to start a wash/wipe programme consisting of a number of low speed wipes. Washer fluid is sprayed during the up-stroke of the first 2 wipes. Continue to hold if additional washer fluid is required. A few seconds after the programme finishes, a drip wipe will clear any residual fluid from the windscreens.

Note: Check and top-up the washer fluid level at least every week. See 170, **CHECKING THE WASHER FLUID LEVEL**.

Note: When the wipers are operated for 20 wipes or more, Windscreen wiper detection will switch on the vehicle's lights. See 48, **WINDSCREEN WIPER DETECTION**.



Sportbrake models have a different wiper/washer control operation to facilitate the rear wash wipe.

1. Push to operate the rear wiper.
2. Rear wash.

Wipers and washers

3. Single wipe for the front screen.



Drip wipe on the windscreen can be enabled/disabled by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.



Washer fluid dispensing, during both the up and down strokes of the wipers, can be enabled/disabled by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Note: If the wipers leave smears on the glass after the car has been washed, this may be due to wax or other residue. Should this occur, clean the glass with washer fluid.

Note: If the wipers become worn, the windscreen will no longer be wiped effectively and the Automatic rain sensing function will degrade. Always replace worn or damaged wiper blades as soon as possible.

Note: If the wiper blades become stuck or jammed, an electronic cut-out may temporarily halt wiper operation. If this happens, switch off the wipers and the ignition. Clear any obstructions and free the wiper blades, before attempting to switch on the ignition.

Note: To set the wipers in the service position for maintenance, or to lift them from the screen. See 157, **WIPERS SERVICE POSITION**.

SPEED-DEPENDENT MODE

If the vehicle decelerates to a stop with the wipers operating*, the wipers will switch to the next lowest speed. When the vehicle's speed increases to over 8 km/h (5 mph), the original wiper speed settings are restored.

*Not applicable if Automatic rain sensing mode is selected.



This feature can be enabled/disabled by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

RAIN SENSOR



Make sure that the wipers are switched off before entering a car wash. If the rain sensitive wipers operate during the car washing process, damage may occur to the wiper mechanism.

The Rain sensor is mounted on the inside of the windscreen, behind the rear-view mirror. The sensor is able to detect the presence and amount of water on the windscreen, and automatically activate the windscreen wipers accordingly.

Note: Static droplets may not be detected on initial start-up. A single wipe should be used to clear the windscreen.

To activate the rain sensitive wipers, move the wiper control to the AUTO position and rotate the collar to adjust sensitivity as required. When rain sensitive wipers are activated and when sensitivity is increased, a single wipe will operate.

Note: In dry, dusty, and often sunny conditions, the windscreen wipers may activate inadvertently. To prevent this, it is recommended that, under these conditions, the wiper controls are returned to the OFF position.

HEADLAMP WASHERS

If the headlamps are on, and there is sufficient liquid in the washer reservoir, operating the screen wash will also power wash the headlamps.

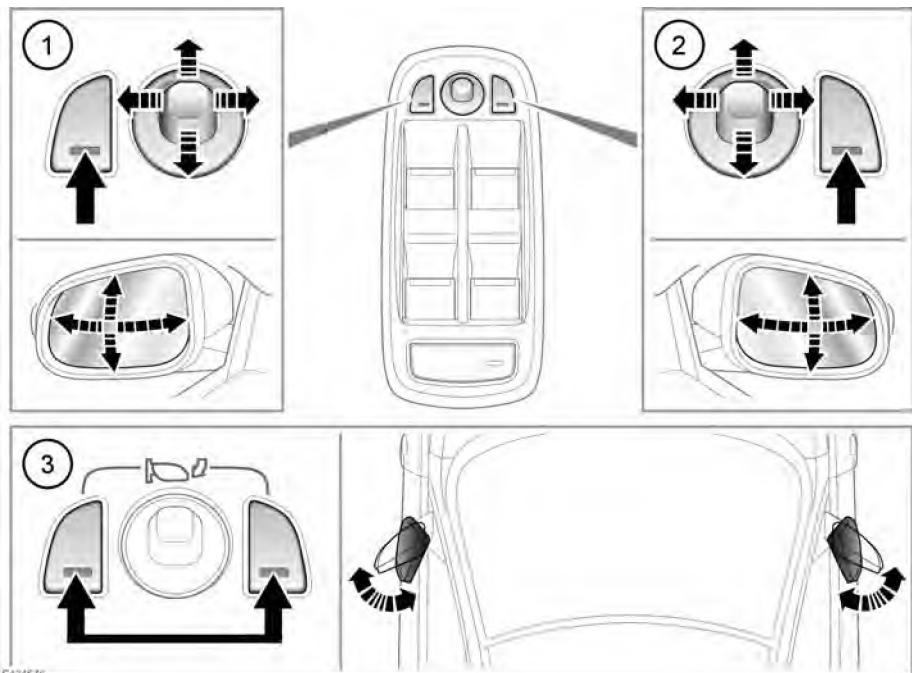
The headlamp power wash will operate on every fourth operation of the screen washer, provided the headlamps are still switched on and approximately 10 minutes have elapsed since the last headlamp wash.

Switching the headlamps or ignition off and back on again, will reset the cycle.

Note: The headlamp power wash is inhibited when the washer fluid reservoir level is low.

Mirrors

EXTERIOR MIRRORS



1. Left mirror adjustment.
2. Right mirror adjustment.
3. Powerfold/Unfold: Press both buttons simultaneously. This feature is inhibited at speeds of over 110 km/h (70 mph).

The mirrors can be adjusted and folded when the ignition is on and for up to 5 minutes after the ignition is switched off, provided the driver's door is not opened.

Press the appropriate button to select the mirror to be adjusted (button indicator illuminates), then use the joystick control to adjust the mirror glass.

Note: Depending on the type of lens used, distances may be difficult to judge accurately when only using the mirrors.

The mirrors can be configured to automatically fold when the vehicle is locked and unfold when unlocked. This feature can be enabled or disabled via the Security/Vehicle settings area of the Touch screen. See **65, VEHICLE SETTINGS**.

If the mirrors are accidentally knocked out of position (i.e., so only 1 is folded), press both buttons simultaneously to re-synchronise.

Note: If the mirrors were folded using the switches, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.

Note: Two different exterior mirror positions can be stored and recalled using the Driving position memory feature. See **18, DRIVING POSITION MEMORY**.

MIRROR DIP WHEN REVERSING

The mirrors can be configured so that when transmission **R** is selected, the passenger door mirror automatically adjusts to provide an improved viewing angle for reversing.

The exact dipped position can be adjusted using the joystick control, when the mirror is dipped. The next time **R** is selected, the newly adjusted position will be selected.

When the gear selector is moved out of **R**, or if the vehicle's speed exceeds 12 km/h (7.5 mph) while reversing, the mirror will return to its previous position.

Mirror dip can be enabled/disabled using the Touch screen, as follows:

- From the Touch screen **Home menu**, select **Set up**.
- Select **Security/Vehicle**.
- Select **Windows/Mirrors**.
- Select **Reverse mirror dip - On or Off**.

Blind spot monitoring

BLIND SPOT MONITOR

- ⚠ The Blind spot monitor (BSM) system is a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style and use of the exterior and rear-view mirrors.**
- ⚠ Please note that BSM may not be able to give adequate warning of vehicles approaching very quickly from behind or vehicles that are being overtaken rapidly.**
- ⚠ BSM may not be able to detect all vehicles and may also detect objects such as roadside barriers, etc.**



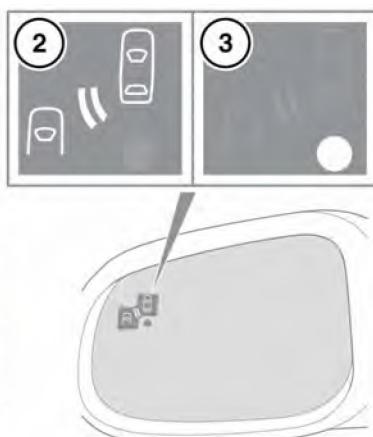
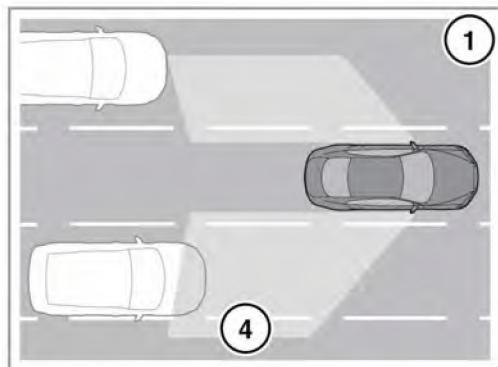
The radar sensors may be impaired by rain, snow, or road spray. This may affect the system's ability to reliably detect a vehicle/object within the blind spot.



Make sure that the warning indicators in the exterior mirrors are not obscured by stickers or other objects.



Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumpers, that may interfere with the radar sensors.



The Blind spot monitor is designed to operate most effectively when driving on multi-lane motorways. It uses radar on each side of the vehicle to monitor blind spot areas (1) that are not easily visible to the driver.

Note: The radar sensor is approved in all RTTE countries.

If an overtaking vehicle/object is identified on either side, an amber warning icon (2) will illuminate in the relevant exterior mirror. This alerts the driver to a potential hazard in the relevant blind spot area and a lane change may be dangerous.

An amber indicator (3) will remain illuminated until the vehicle's speed exceeds 16 km/h (10 mph).

The radar monitored area extends to approximately 6 metres (20 ft) behind the rear wheels and up to 2.5 metres (8.2 ft) from the side of the vehicle. An approximate lane width is monitored on each side of the vehicle. If the lanes are narrower than a typical carriageway lane, objects travelling in non-adjacent lanes (4) may be detected.

Note: If overtaking vehicles are detected on both sides of the vehicle simultaneously, the warning icons in both mirrors will illuminate.

BSM automatically switches on and becomes active when the vehicle is travelling at more than 16 km/h (10 mph) in a forward gear. When the system initiates, it performs a self-check, during which the warning icons in the mirrors illuminate alternately for a short period of time.

Note: When transmission **R** or **P** is selected, or the vehicle is travelling below 16 km/h (10 mph), BSM is turned off and the amber warning indicator (3) is displayed.

BSM SENSORS

The BSM system will automatically disable if either of the sensors become completely obscured, an amber warning indicator dot (2) is displayed in the exterior mirror and the message **BLIND SPOT MONITOR SENSOR BLOCKED** appears in the Message centre.

Note: Blockage testing is only initiated when the vehicle's speed is above 32 km/h (20 mph) and will take at least 2 minutes of accumulated driving above this speed, to determine that the sensor is blocked.

If the sensors become blocked, then please check that there is nothing obscuring the rear bumper and that it is clear from ice, frost and dirt.

If a fault with one of the sensors is detected, the amber warning indicator dot is displayed in the exterior mirror and the message **BLIND SPOT MONITOR NOT AVAILABLE** is displayed in the Message centre.

Note: Even if the detected fault only affects the sensor on one side of the vehicle, the whole system is disabled. If the fault is temporary, the system will operate correctly once the engine has been switched off and then on again.

If the fault remains after switching off and on again, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Garage door opener

GARAGE DOOR TRANSCEIVER

- ⚠ Do not use the transceiver with any Garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature as required by safety standards.**
- ⚠ When programming the transceiver to a Garage door opener or entry gate, make sure the area is clear. This will prevent potential harm or damage as the gate or garage door will activate during the programme.**
- ⚠ This device may suffer from interference if operated in the vicinity of a mobile or fixed station transmitter. This interference is likely to affect the hand-held transmitter as well as the in-car transceiver.**

The door transceiver is located in the rear-view mirror. It can be programmed to transmit the radio frequencies of up to 3 different transmitters, which can be used to operate garage doors, entry gates, home lighting, security systems or other radio frequency operated devices.

Although this section mainly describes the procedures for a Garage door opener, it equally applies to the previously mentioned applications.

In some countries, this feature is also known as the HomeLink® Universal Transceiver.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.

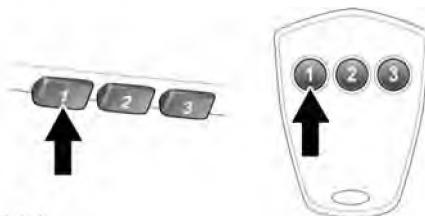
For further information, see **60, INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE**.

BEFORE PROGRAMMING

- ⚠ When programming a device that may require you to press and re-press the hand-held transmitter (cycle), unplug the device during the cycling process to prevent possible motor failure.**

For best results, fit a new battery to the hand-held transmitter of the Garage door opener (or other device) before programming. If your garage door opener receiver (located in the garage) is equipped with an antenna, make sure that the antenna is hanging straight down.

PROGRAMMING



Making sure that the engine is switched off:

1. Make sure that the ignition is in Convenience mode. See **6, CONVENIENCE MODE**).
2. Hold the end of the original Garage door opener hand-held transmitter 50 to 150 mm (2 to 6 inches) away from the transceiver in the rear-view mirror, keeping the indicator lamp in view.

3. Using both hands, simultaneously press and hold both the chosen transceiver button on the rear-view mirror, as shown above, and the hand-held transmitter button. Keep both buttons pressed. The indicator lamp will flash slowly at first and then change to a fast flash. When the indicator lamp flashes rapidly, release both buttons. The rapid flashing lamp indicates successful programming.
4. If, after 60 seconds, the indicator lamp does not flash rapidly, release both the transceiver and the hand-held transmitter buttons and repeat the procedure, starting with Step 2. Position the hand-held transmitter at a different angle and/or distance.
5. Press and hold the programmed Garage door opener button and observe the indicator lamp.
 - If the indicator is continuous, programming is complete and your device should operate when the Garage door opener button is pressed and held for approximately 1 to 2 seconds and then released.
 - If the indicator lamp blinks rapidly for 2 seconds and then illuminates continuously, proceed with the following programming instructions for rolling code device equipment.

TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING

For first time programming, make sure that the engine is switched off:

1. Make sure that the ignition system is in Convenience mode. See **6, CONVENIENCE MODE**.

2. Press and hold the 2 outer buttons on the transceiver in the rear-view mirror. Keep the buttons pressed until the indicator lamp begins to flash (this will take approximately 20 seconds), then release the buttons.

All memories in the Garage door opener have now been cleared.

Note: Do not perform this procedure when programming the additional Garage door opener buttons.

ROLLING CODE DEVICE EQUIPMENT PROGRAMMING

Note: The assistance of a second person, may make the following steps quicker and easier. Once the button has been pressed there are only 30 seconds in which to complete Step 3.

1. At the Garage door opener receiver (motor head unit) in the garage, locate the learn or smart button/switch.
 - The name of the button or switch may vary between manufacturers.
2. Press and release the learn or smart button.
3. Return to the vehicle and firmly press and hold the programmed Garage door opener button for 2 seconds and release.
4. Repeat the press, hold, release sequence 3 times to complete the programming process.

The Garage door opener in the rear-view mirror should now activate the rolling code device.

REPROGRAMMING A SINGLE GARAGE DOOR OPENER BUTTON

To programme a device to a previously programmed button:

1. Press and hold the desired pre-programmed Garage door opener button for at least 20 seconds, but no longer than 30 seconds, until the indicator lamp begins to flash.

- Without releasing the rear-view mirror button, position the hand-held transmitter approximately 50 to 150 mm (2 to 6 inches) away from the transceiver in the rear-view mirror, keeping the indicator lamp in view.
- Carry out Step 3 of **Programming**.

ENTRY GATE PROGRAMMING

The technology of some entry gates requires you to press and re-press (cycle) the hand-held transmitter button every 2 seconds during programming.

Continue to press and hold the desired rear-view mirror button while you cycle your hand-held transmitter until the indicator lamp flashes rapidly.

INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE

 It is recommended that when you sell or dispose of the vehicle, the programmed transceiver buttons be erased for security purposes.

For information on the range of available compatible products or accessories, or for assistance, you should contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer or contact Homelink via their website.

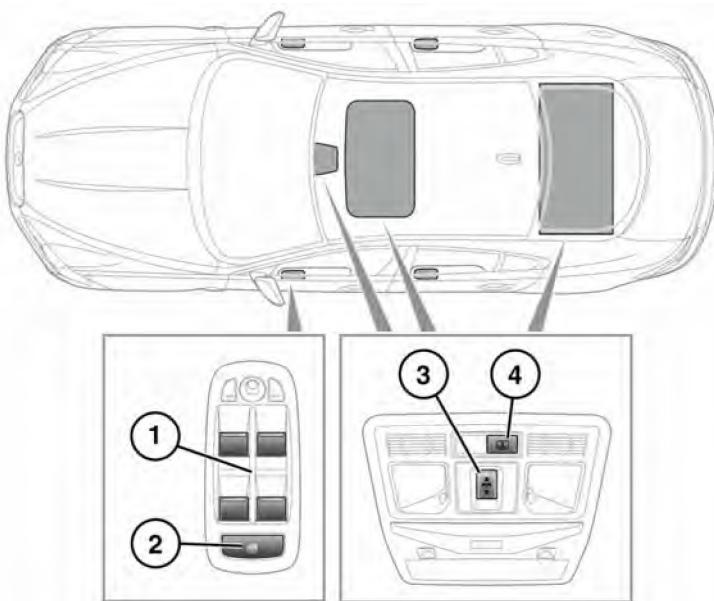
The website address is **www.homelink.com**.

Note: *Keep the original transmitter for future use or programming procedures if, for example, you purchase a new vehicle.*

Note: *The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorised modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

ELECTRIC WINDOWS

E143647



1. Window switches: The windows will operate for 5 minutes after the engine is switched off, as long as none of the doors are opened.

⚠ Make sure that the Smart key is removed when leaving passengers in the vehicle. This will prevent unsupervised operation of the windows and sunroof, which may result in injury.

⚠ Any ice must be removed from the windows prior to operation.

2. Rear window isolator.

⚠ If children are carried in the rear seats, the isolator switch should be used to prevent operation of the windows.

3. Sunroof:

- With the roof closed, briefly press the front of the switch to tilt the roof. The blind will also open fully.
- With the roof closed, briefly press the rear of the switch to open the roof. The blind will also open fully.
- With the roof open, briefly press the front of the switch to close fully.
- With the roof tilted, briefly press the rear of the switch to close.

Roof movement can be halted at any time by pressing the button again. If the sunroof encounters resistance when closing, it will stop and then open fully. This is to prevent serious injury or damage to the mechanism. The sunroof blind can be opened manually whenever required, but can be closed only when the sunroof is closed.

4. Rear screen sun blind.

Note: If a resonance or a booming sound occurs when a rear window is open, lowering an adjacent front window by approximately 25mm (1 inch) will eliminate the condition.

ONE-TOUCH WINDOW OPERATION

 **Make sure that all adults are familiar with the controls and the potential dangers of electrically operated windows.**

The front windows have One-touch open operation. Briefly press the switch down fully and release, the window will lower until fully open.

The rear windows open in 2 stages:

- Briefly press the switch down fully and release; the window will open 65 - 75 mm (2.5 - 3 inches) to the comfort stop position.
- Briefly press the switch down fully and release a second time, to fully open the window.

The front and rear windows also have One-touch close operation. Briefly pull the switch up fully and release, the window will rise until fully closed.

Pressing or pulling the switch again will stop a window in One-touch operation.

Front and rear windows can be globally opened and closed with the Smart key. See 6, **GLOBAL OPENING** and 14, **GLOBAL CLOSING**.

WINDOW ANTI-TRAP PROTECTION

 **Before closing a window, make sure that no occupants have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system death or serious injury could occur.**

Anti-trap protection is designed to stop window movement if an obstruction or resistance is detected. Check the window and its aperture and remove any obstructions. The override procedure is as follows:

1. Attempt to close the window. Anti-trap will prevent closure and lower the window.
2. Within 10 seconds, attempt to raise the window again. Anti-trap will prevent closure and lower the window.
3. Attempt to close the window for a third time, this time holding the switch in the close position. The window will raise while the switch is held. Hold until closed.

Note: If this procedure fails to remove the blockage, or if the windows do not operate correctly, the window operation may need to be reset. See 157, **WINDOW RESET**.

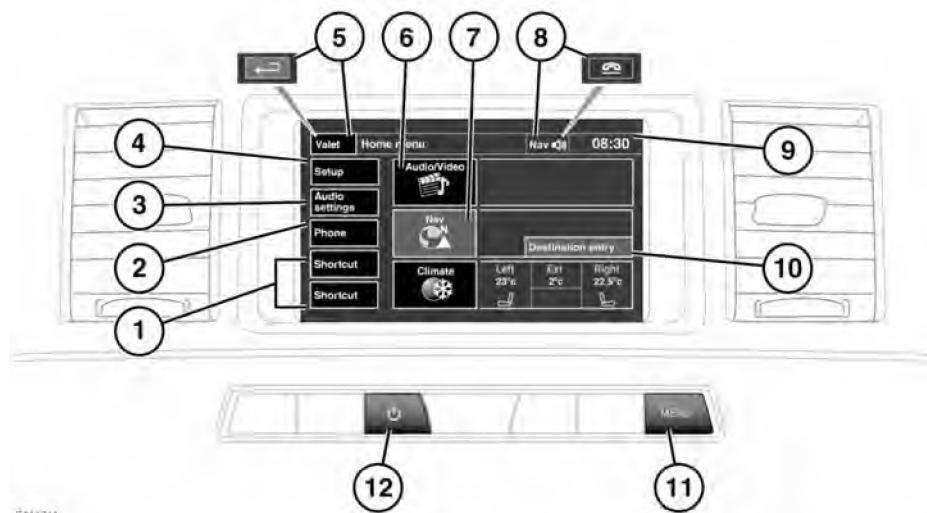
SUNROOF ANTI-TRAP MECHANISM

 **Before closing the sunroof, make sure that no occupants have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an Anti-trap system death or serious injury could occur.**

The Anti-trap mechanism can be overridden to allow the roof to be closed when movement is restricted by dirt. To override the Anti-trap mechanism, press and hold the front of the switch until the roof reaches the closed position.

If the sunroof fails to operate correctly, it may need to be reset. See 157, **SUNROOF RESET**.

TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU



E149214



Do not adjust the Touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.



Always run the engine during prolonged use of the Touch screen. Failure to do so may discharge the vehicle's battery, preventing the engine from starting.



Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the Touch screen.

1. To change the shortcuts, see, **64, TOUCH SCREEN SETUP**.
2. Touch to select the **Phone** menu.
3. Touch to select the **Audio settings** menu.
4. Press to select the Touch screen **Setup** menu.

5. Touch to select **Valet** mode. During menu mode, the icon is changed to the Back soft key. Touch to return to the previous screen displayed.
6. Touch or press to select the **Audio/Video** menu. See **102, AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS**.
7. Touch or press to select the **Nav** menu. Current set destination is displayed.
8. While navigation is operating, touch to repeat the last given navigation instruction. During a phone call, the icon is changed. Touch to end the call.
9. Touch to adjust the time/date.
10. Not available with Brazil navigation.
11. Press to select the **Home** menu.
12. Press to turn the Touch screen on/off.

Note: For vehicles with Intelligent stop/start, this switch position becomes an **ECO** switch and is used to turn the feature off. The original switch icon becomes a soft key on the Touch screen. To turn on the Touch screen simply touch the screen. To turn the Touch screen off again, touch the screen icon.

TOUCH SCREEN CARE

! Do not use abrasive cleaners to clean the Touch screen. For approved screen cleaners, contact your Dealer/ Authorised Repairer.

TOUCH SCREEN SETUP

Select **Setup** from the **Home menu** screen.

The **Setup** screen is divided into categories:

- **Screen.**
- **System.**
- **Voice.**
- **Audio.** See **103, AUDIO SETTINGS.**
- **Trip computer.**
- **Security/Vehicle.**

SCREEN SETTINGS

Volume pop-up: Displays a Volume pop-up on/off icon.

Screensaver: Change screensaver.

Screen animation: Turn animated transitions between screens on/off.

Note: While screen animations are on, the system's response time will be slower than normal.

Time out home: Sub-menu selection screens can be set to revert to the **Home** menu after a pre-determined length of time.

Theme: Changes appearance of the Touch screen soft keys.

SYSTEM SETTINGS

Button feedback: Select to turn the soft key confirmation tone on/off.

Clock adjust: Select the **12** or the **24** hour clock. Set the current time. Select **Date** to change the date, or to alter the date format. Select **Set**, to store new settings.

Note: The clock can also be adjusted from the Touch screen time display.

Home menu shortcuts: Select up to 2 items from the displayed list, to appear as shortcuts on the **Home menu**. Select **Clear** to deselect highlighted items.

Language: Select the required language. Select **Male** or **Female** voice. Touch **Change** to select alternatives for Voice and text displays. Follow the on-screen instructions to confirm.

Note: Some languages are not yet available for both System display text and Voice control. In this event, it will be necessary to select a separate language for Voice control.

Volume presets: Adjust the volume for the available systems (announcements, Parking aid, Phone, etc.).

VOICE SETTINGS

Command list: View the categories and the acceptable voice commands. Select an **Information** soft key to view alternative function commands.

Voicetags: View the categories. Select a category to manage the Voicetags for the chosen system. See **124, VOICETAGS.**

Operating guide: View brief Voice system instructions. Select **Voice tutorial** for more detailed instructions (cancel via the displayed pop-up or by pressing and holding the steering wheel Voice button).

Preferences: Select to alter the following settings:

- **Voice profile:** The Voice system can be trained to have a greater recognition of a particular voice or accent. The default setting is **Standard**. To build a Voice profile for either **User 1** or **User 2**, it is necessary to complete a training programme first.
- To complete the training for the first time, select either **User 1** or **User 2** and follow the on-screen and audible instructions.
- **Voice feedback:** Select **On/Off**.
- **Feedback volume:** Adjust using the **+/** buttons. It is not possible to reduce the volume to zero.
- **Voice training:** Select to access the Voice system training programme, designed to enable the system to better recognise the vocal characteristics of a user.
- Select **User 1** or **User 2** and follow the on-screen and audible instructions. See **124, VOICE TRAINING**.

The training session can be cancelled, at any time, by touching the on-screen pop-up or by pressing and holding the Voice button on the steering wheel. See **123, USING VOICE CONTROL**.

TRIP COMPUTER SETTINGS

Trip Computer: Select to switch Trip computer readings between **Trip A**, **Trip B** and **Trip Auto**. Select **Reset** to zero the Trip computer readings. Select **Units** to switch the Trip computer readings between Imperial and Metric measurements.

VEHICLE SETTINGS

Scroll down through the menu until the desired feature is displayed, then select **On** or **Off**, as appropriate.

Security: Select to enable/disable or alter the settings of the following:

- Single/Multi-point entry (2 stage unlocking).
- Alarm sensors (interior and tilt).
- Drive-away locking.

Note: If Drive-away locking is switched on, also select the desired activation speed, 8, 16 or 32 km/h (5, 10 or 20 mph).

Windows/mirrors: Select to enable/disable:

- Global opening/closing of the windows and sunroof.
- Exterior mirror dip when reversing.
- Automatic folding/unfolding of exterior mirrors when the vehicle is locked/unlocked.
- Interior mirror dimming.

Units: Select to switch between Imperial and Metric measurements.

High beam assist: Select to:

- Turn High beam assist on or off.
- Set High beam assist for the side of road being driven on.

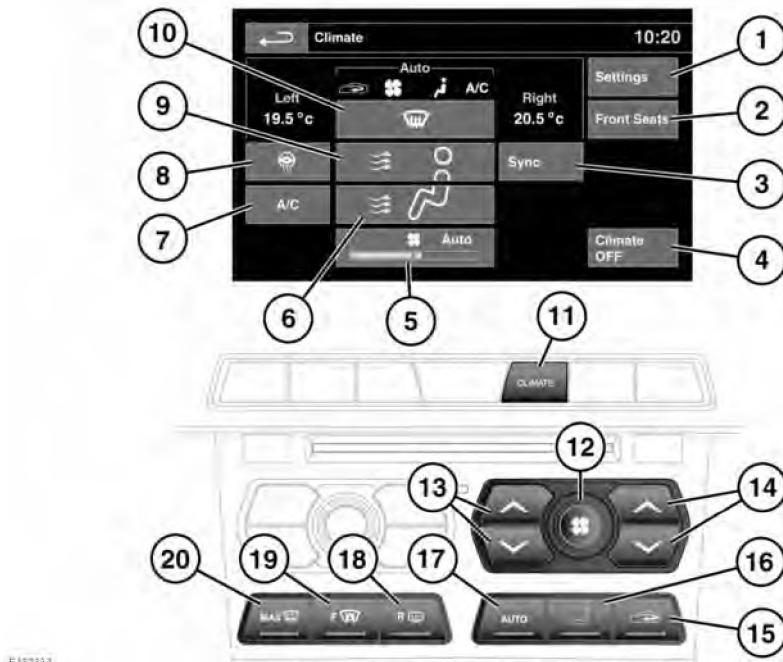
SELECTING VALET MODE

Valet mode allows the vehicle to be driven and locked by a parking attendant, without giving access to the Luggage compartment and glove box. Valet mode also prevents operation of the Touch screen, to prevent access to telephone numbers or navigation addresses.

Each time Valet mode is used, a Personal Identification Number (PIN) must be entered.

1. From the **Home menu**, select **Valet**.
2. Enter a memorable 4 digit PIN. You will be prompted to confirm the PIN. If you wish to cancel the PIN, select **Delete**. If the PIN is cancelled, or incorrectly entered, you will be prompted to enter the PIN again.
3. **Valet mode activated** is displayed to indicate that a PIN has been accepted.

CLIMATE CONTROL



To access the Climate menu on the Touch screen, select **Climate** from the **Home menu**.

1. Touch to change the personal climate zone settings, to set the vent rotation mode and the Automatic air recirculation sensor control settings.
2. Touch to access the seat heating/climate seat menu.
3. Touch to synchronise the passenger's climate zone to the driver's settings.
4. Touch to turn Climate control off.
5. Indicates blower speed.
6. Touch to select air distribution to the feet.
7. Air conditioning on.
8. Touch to select the steering wheel heater on/off settings.
9. Touch to select air distribution to the face.
10. Touch to select air distribution to the windscreens.
11. Press to short-cut to the Touch screen **Climate** menu.
Note: Not fitted on vehicles with the Navigation system.
12. Blower speed: Rotate to adjust the blower speed. Blower speed is automatically set in Auto mode. Adjusting the blower speed will cancel Auto mode.
Press the centre button to switch Climate control on/off.

Touch screen

The Luggage compartment and glove box are now securely locked in Valet mode and the **Valet mode On** screen is displayed.

DESELECTING VALET MODE

1. When you re-enter the vehicle, select **Valet**.
2. Enter your memorable 4 digit PIN and touch the **OK** soft key.

Valet mode deactivated is displayed to indicate that a PIN has been accepted.

- The Luggage compartment and glove box will return to the previously set security requirement.
- The Touch screen will be enabled.

***Note:** If the PIN is forgotten, Valet mode can only be deactivated by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.*

Heating and ventilation

13. Left-side temperature control: Press to adjust the temperature for the left side of the vehicle. The temperature is displayed on the Touch screen (HI or LO is displayed when the maximum or minimum setting is selected).

Note: The maximum possible temperature differential between the left and right side temperature settings is 3°C (5.4°F).

14. Right-side temperature control: Press to adjust the temperature for the right side of the vehicle. The temperature is displayed on the Touch screen (HI or LO is displayed when the maximum or minimum setting is selected).

15. Press briefly to select Timed recirculation. Press and hold to select Latched recirculation. Timed circulation will switch off automatically. Latched recirculation will continue until switched off. Press again to switch off. Recirculation may also be selected automatically in AUTO mode.

Note: Prolonged use of recirculation may cause the windows to mist.

16. Press to access the seat heating/climate seat menu.

17. AUTO control: Use as the normal operating mode. Press to switch automatic operation on/off. If an Air quality sensor is fitted and the Climate control detects high levels of pollution outside the vehicle, recirculation may be selected automatically. Manual operation of the control will override the automatic setting.

18. Press to turn the heated rear screen on/off. The screen heater will switch off automatically after a timed period, depending on the ambient temperature.

19. Press to turn the heated front screen on/off.

The screen heater will switch off automatically after a timed period, depending on the ambient temperature.

Note: In cold ambient temperatures below 5°C (41°F), the screen heaters will automatically switch on when the engine is started unless the engine or vehicle's interior is already warm.

20. Defrost: Press to remove frost or heavy misting from the windscreen. This setting activates the blowers, air conditioning, front and rear screen heaters, and prohibits recirculation, to achieve a rapid defrost.

In addition to the selectable controls, the Climate menu displays symbols that indicate the status of the heating and ventilation functions.

Note: If the Climate control system is switched off, pressing an AUTO button or the Defrost button, will switch the system on.

Note: Water expelled by the air conditioning may collect underneath the vehicle when parked. This is not a cause for concern.

AUTOMATIC RECIRCULATION

If an Air quality sensor is fitted, the Climate control system will monitor exterior air pollution and select recirculation if a predetermined level is reached. This feature only operates when the Climate control system is in AUTO mode. The sensitivity of the Air quality sensor can be set via the Touch screen. See **68, AIR QUALITY SENSOR.**

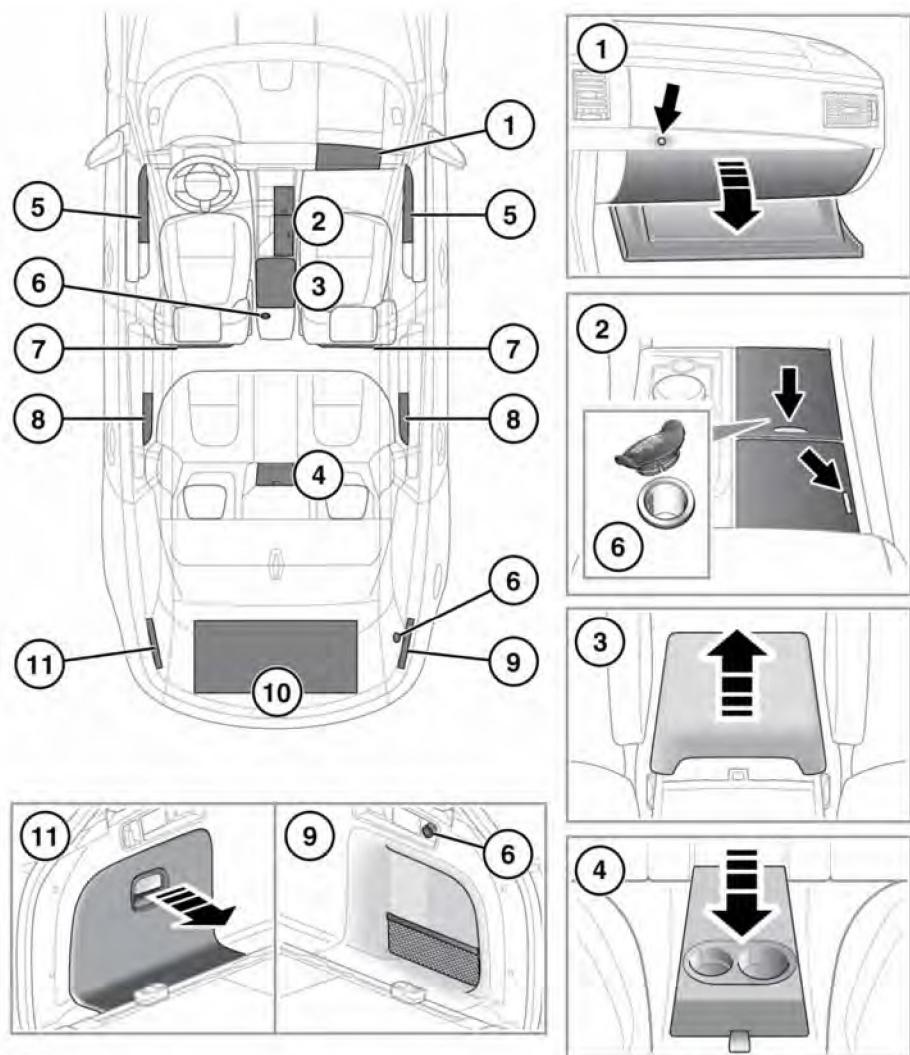
Pressing the recirculation button will deactivate Automatic recirculation.

AIR QUALITY SENSOR

The sensitivity of the Air quality sensor can be adjusted using the Touch screen:

Storage compartments

STORAGE COMPARTMENTS



1. Glove box: Open using the glove box release (arrowed).

Note: When Valet mode is selected, the glove box release is disabled.

2. Cup holder: Press the button to open.

1. Select **Settings** from the **Climate** menu.
2. Touch the +/- buttons on the screen to increase/decrease sensitivity.

To switch off the air quality sensing, decrease sensitivity to the minimum setting.



The Auto recirculation icon appears on the Touch screen when the air quality sensor is switched on.

HEATED SEATS

Note: The seat heaters will operate only when the engine is running.

The Heated seats are controlled through the Touch screen.

To access the heating controls:

- Press the seat menu buttons on the facia.
- Or, select from the **Climate** menu, select **Front seats**.

To adjust the seat temperature:

- Touch the relevant seat icon repeatedly, to select 1 of 3 temperature settings (as indicated by the red bars).
- If no bars are illuminated, the Heated seats are switched off.

CLIMATE SEATS

Note: The Climate seats will operate only when the engine is running.

Seat heating and ventilation is controlled from the **Home** or **Climate** menus on the Touch screen or by the seat menu button.

Heated ventilation:

- Touch the red arrow icon to switch heated ventilation on at a maximum (3 red bars).
- Touch the blue arrow icon once or twice to reduce the heated ventilation setting (2 and 1 red bars).

- Touch the blue arrow a third time to switch off the seat heated ventilation.

Cooled ventilation:

- Touch the blue arrow icon to switch cooled ventilation on at a maximum (3 blue bars).
- Touch the red arrow icon once or twice to reduce the cooled ventilation setting (2 and 1 blue bars).
- Touch the red arrow a third time to switch off the seat cooled ventilation.

To select seatback ventilation only:

- Select **Settings** from the **Climate** menu.
- Select the appropriate icon for full seat or seatback only ventilation.



Do not drink, or use the cup holders when driving.

To remove the cup holder insert for cleaning, lift the front edge rearwards and then upwards, to disengage the retaining clips.

When refitting the insert, push it fully into the compartment and run your thumb down the inside surface at the front and rear, to re-engage the clips. If the lid of the cup holder does not close correctly, the insert has not been properly refitted.

- 3. Cubby box.**
- 4. Rear cup holders.**
- 5. Front door stowage.**
- 6. Auxiliary power sockets.**
- !** Only use approved accessories and always run the engine when using accessories for a prolonged period.
- 7. Map pockets.**
- 8. Rear door stowage.**
- 9. Side pocket with netting (Sportbrake only).**
- 10. Under floor storage (Sportbrake only).**
- 11. Side storage compartment (Sportbrake only).**

Luggage compartment

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT COVER



The Sportbrake luggage area cover can lift and close with the tailgate movement. The whole assembly can be fitted or removed, as required.

⚠️ Never place objects on top of the luggage compartment cover. During an accident or sudden manoeuvre, loose objects can cause serious injury or death.

1. With the tailgate open and the rear seats folded forward, engage the left end of the assembly into the moulded recess in the left side of the loadspace.
2. Lower the right end of the assembly into the right side recess. Turn the lever and push the assembly down into position. Release the lever. Make sure that the assembly has clicked into position and that the lever has returned to its original position. To remove the assembly, the locking lever must first be turned.
3. Pull the spring-loaded cover out of the assembly housing. Locate the left and right side pegs into the lower end of the side runners just inside the tailgate opening. Slide them up until the spring mechanism pulls the cover into position.

When the tailgate is opened, the cover can be partially retracted up the side runners or fully retracted into the assembly housing.

Note: *It may be easier to fit/remove the cover if the rear seatbacks have been folded forward.*

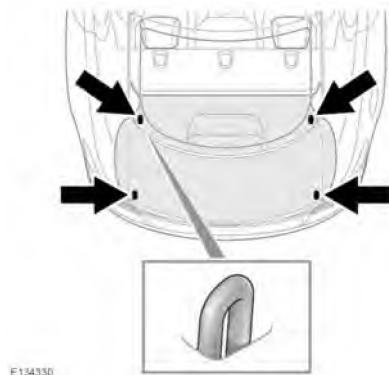
Note: *Removal of the cover is the reverse of fitting procedure.*



Do not store the luggage compartment cover loose in the vehicle. During an accident or sudden manoeuvre, the cover could cause serious injury or death.

LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS

⚠ All items carried in the vehicle should be properly secured.



4 securing points are provided in the luggage area to assist in safely securing items.

Roof luggage

Jaguar branded cross bars are required for fitting all roof carrying equipment. The roof load must not exceed 75 kg (165 lb).

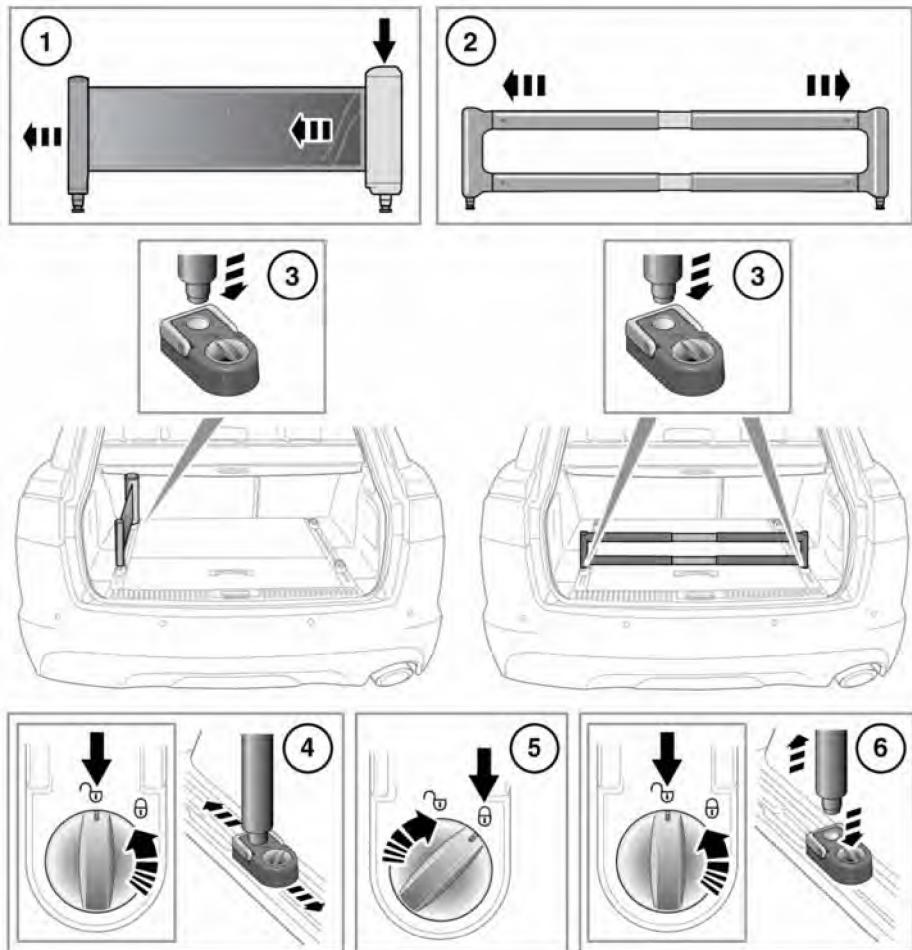
Note: A range of approved luggage retention accessories is available from your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Luggage compartment

LUGGAGE DIVIDER

For Sportbrake models, a luggage divider kit is provided to assist with safely securing items of luggage to the loadspace floor.

Floor-mounted luggage rails provide a full width mounting channel that will accommodate a flexible retracting band and/or a solid telescopic divider to retain soft and hard luggage of all shapes and sizes.



E156932

1. Press and pull to adjust to the length required of the retracting band.

2. Adjust the divider to the length required.

3. Unlock the required lashing eye, attach the luggage band/divider to the lashing eye.
4. With the lashing eye in the unlocked position, press the switch and slide to the required position in the luggage rail.
5. Lock the lashing eye when it is in the required position.
6. To remove the luggage band/divider from the lashing eye, unlock the lashing eye and press the lock/unlock switch and release.

TOWING A TRAILER

Diesel vehicles only

It is the driver's responsibility to make sure that the towing vehicle and trailer, are being used correctly and in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and any applicable legislation.

⚠ Never exceed any of the following weights; Gross vehicle weight (GVW), maximum rear axle weight, maximum trailer weight, maximum permissible nose load and maximum towing equipment nose load. Doing so can cause accelerated wear and damage to the vehicle. It can also adversely affect vehicle stability and braking, which in turn can lead to a loss of control and an increased braking distance, resulting in a rollover or crash.

⚠ To preserve handling and stability, fit only Jaguar approved towing accessories.

⚠ Never use towing eyes or lashing points to tow a trailer. They have not been designed for this purpose and doing so may cause them to fail, resulting in injury or death.

⚠ When towing, do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph), or 80 km/h (50 mph) if the temporary spare wheel is in use.

Information on towing, towing weight capacities and regulations is available from your Dealer and from the main motoring and caravanning organisations.

The following are important points of safety, stability, and comfort. Seek further advice if necessary.

- Maximum braked towing weight is permissible, provided that long periods of uphill driving on gradients of over 8% are not undertaken.

- At altitudes above 1000 metres (3,280 feet), the stipulated maximum permitted Gross train weight (GTW) must be reduced by 10% for every 1000 metres (3,280 feet) in altitude, because the thinner atmosphere can reduce engine performance.

Diesel engines: When ambient temperature exceeds 40°C (104°F), the engine coolant temperature may increase above the normal operating level. If this occurs, the engine management system will initiate a series of actions to restore normal operating conditions, which may include:

- A Message centre message.
- Engine performance reduction.
- Air conditioning system cycling. The Air conditioning temperature output will fluctuate between hot and cold, in order to dissipate engine heat. If engine overheat persists, the air conditioning will move to a continuous heat output.

It is advisable to bring the vehicle and trailer to a convenient stop and allow the engine to idle until normal temperature is restored. Do not turn off the engine.

Sportbrake towing system

The optional detachable tow ball receiver, complete with towing electrics, is concealed behind a clip-in panel in the lower rear valance. The tow ball has a dedicated stowage position under the loadspace floor.

TRAILER ELECTRICAL CONNECTION

⚠ Connect only approved electrical circuits, which are in good condition, to the trailer socket. Connecting incorrect or faulty circuits, may seriously damage the vehicle's electrical circuits.

The vehicle's electrical system has been designed to support all towing requirements and to comply with legal requirements for the specific territory in which the vehicle is first sold.

Note: The rear parking sensors automatically disable when the trailer's electrical connection is made using Jaguar approved towing equipment.

TOWING WEIGHTS

	Maximum permissible towing weights
Unbraked trailers	750 kg (1653 lb)
Trailers with overrun brakes	1850 kg (4080 lb)
Tow ball/hitch nose/tongue weight	75 kg (165 lb)

Nose/tongue weight must be the greater of 50 kg (110 lb) or 7% of the actual trailer weight, up to the maximum tow hitch load. Nose/tongue weight can be measured using a proprietary brand of nose weight indicator.

If it is necessary to increase the nose/tongue weight up to the maximum 75 kg (165 lb), the vehicle's load should be reduced accordingly. This makes sure that the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) and maximum rear axle load are not exceeded.

Note: When towing in the European Union (EU), the maximum Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) can be increased by up to 100 kg (220 lb), provided that the vehicle's road speed is limited to 100 km/h (60 mph). In this situation, the tow ball nose weight is limited to 50 kg (110 lb).

Note: When calculating rear axle loading, remember that the tow ball nose weight, the load in the vehicle's luggage area, weight on the roof rack, and the weight of rear seat passengers must all be considered.

For details of the GVW, vehicle weight and axle weights, see 210, WEIGHTS.

ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

-  **Do not loop the breakaway cable over the tow ball, as it may slide off.**
-  **Do not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), maximum rear axle weight, maximum trailer weight, or nose weight. Exceeding any of these limits could cause instability and a loss of control.**
- When calculating the laden weight of the trailer, remember to include the weight of the trailer, plus the weight of the load.
- If the load can be divided between the vehicle and the trailer, loading more weight into the vehicle will generally improve the stability. Do not exceed the vehicle's weight limits.
- For maximum stability, make sure that loads are properly secured and unable to shift position during transit. Also, position loads so that most of the weight is placed close to the floor and, where possible, immediately above or close to the trailer axle(s).
- To maintain vehicle stability, it is essential that the trailer is loaded so that it remains parallel to the ground. This is particularly important when towing twin-axle trailers.
- Make sure that all applicable regulations and legislation are complied with when loading and towing a trailer.

- Increase the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle to those for maximum GVW conditions. See **183, TYRE PRESSURES**.
- Make sure that the trailer tyre pressures are set to the trailer manufacturer's recommendations.
- If the vehicle is loaded to the maximum GVW, the tow ball nose weight is limited to 50 kg (110 lb).
- Make sure that a suitable breakaway cable and/or a safety chain is used. Refer to the trailer manufacturer's instructions for guidance.
- Make sure that the tow ball is secure.
- Check the operation of all the trailer lights.
- In Europe, the nose weight must be a minimum of 4% of the gross caravan/trailer weight.

Australia only: The nose weight must be a minimum of 7% to 10% of the gross caravan/trailer weight, up to a maximum of 75 kg (165 lb).

TRAILER SWAY MITIGATION (TSM)

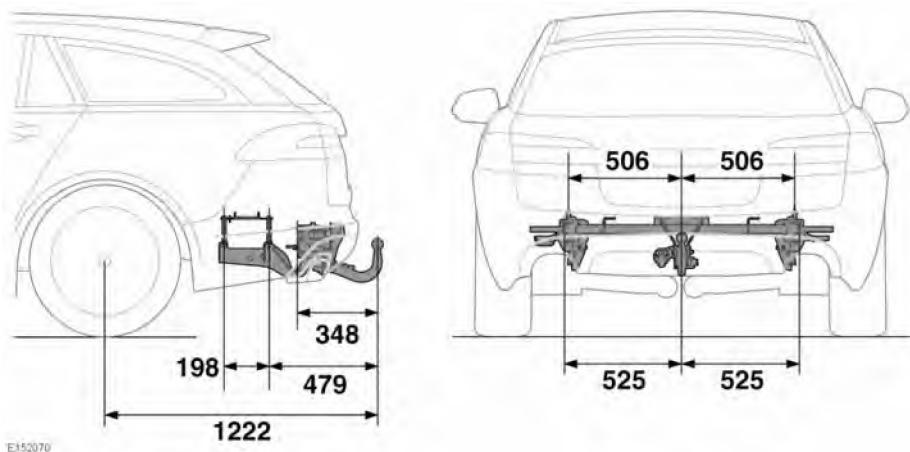
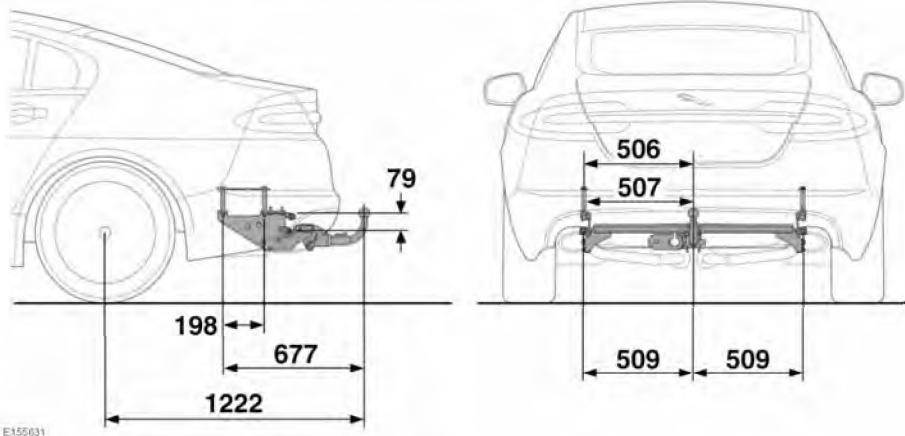
Note: *This feature may not operate with all trailer designs.*

- ⚠️ Trailer sway mitigation will not operate in the event of the trailer jack-knifing.
- ⚠️ The ability of the system may be reduced when travelling on slippery surfaces.

TSM is an automatic feature to assist with the stability of a trailer when towing. If trailer sway is detected, engine power will be gradually reduced and the brakes applied, to help regain control.

Note: *TSM will not operate when Dynamic stability control is switched off.*

TOW BAR DIMENSIONS AND MOUNTING POINTS



Note: Dimensions are in millimetres.

Starting the engine

STARTING THE ENGINE

- ⚠ Never start the engine, or leave it running, when the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Exhaust gases are poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.**
- ⚠ If the engine fails to start, do not continue cranking as this will discharge the battery. It may also damage the catalytic converter due to unburnt fuel passing through the exhaust.**

Note: The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container, or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen such as a smart phone, laptop (including laptop bag), games console etc. Keep the Smart key clear of such devices when attempting Keyless entry or Keyless starting.

To start the engine



1. Make sure that a valid Smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure that transmission P or N is selected.
3. Firmly depress the brake pedal.
4. Press and release the engine START/STOP button.

Once the engine has started, the brake pedal can be released, if it is safe to do so.



SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

The engine can be switched off while the vehicle is stationary, or while it is moving.

While the vehicle is stationary:

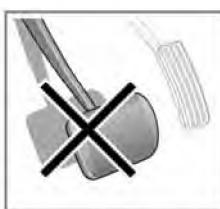
1. Make sure that the vehicle is parked with transmission P selected and the EPB applied.
2. Press and release the engine START/STOP button.

While the vehicle is moving:

⚠ It is not advisable to switch off the engine while the vehicle is moving. However, if a situation arises where engine switch off is urgent, the following procedure applies:

1. Press and hold the engine START/STOP button for 2 seconds, or;
2. Press and release the engine START/STOP button twice within 2 seconds.

SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION



To switch on the ignition without starting the engine

1. Make sure the brake pedal is not depressed and that a valid Smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Press and hold the engine START/STOP button until the warning lamps illuminate.
3. Release the engine START/STOP button.

! If the brake pedal is applied when the engine **START/STOP** button is pressed, the engine will start.

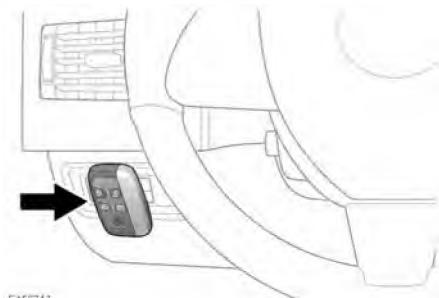
ROLLING RE-START

If the engine is switched off while the vehicle is moving, a rolling re-start can be initiated by selecting transmission **N** and then pressing the engine **START/STOP** button.

KEYLESS START BACKUP

If the vehicle has been unlocked using the emergency key blade or the Smart key is not detected by the vehicle, it will be necessary to use the Keyless start backup to disarm the alarm and start the engine.

The Keyless start backup can only be used when the message **Smart Key Not Found - Refer to Handbook** is displayed in the Message centre.



1. Position the Smart key flat against the facia, over the auxiliary switch pack, in the position shown.
2. Firmly depress the brake pedal.
3. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.

Once the engine has started, the brake pedal can be released, if it is safe to do so.

If the Smart key is not recognised, or the engine still fails to start, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

IF THE ENGINE FAILS TO START

If the engine fails to crank when the engine **START/STOP** button is pressed and there has been a recent collision, seek qualified assistance.

ENGINE BLOCK HEATERS

! The fitting of an engine block heater does not eliminate the need for antifreeze.

Engines are more difficult to start when the ambient temperature is very low. In geographical areas where temperatures below -10°C (14°F) are experienced frequently, it is advisable to fit an engine block heater. The block heater will have an insulated connector at the front of the vehicle, which is connected to a mains supply using a suitable extension cable. The heater can remain in use overnight, if required. Typically, an engine block heater will use between 0.4 and 1 kWh.

For further information, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

INTELLIGENT STOP/START

The Intelligent stop/start system is designed to improve fuel efficiency and is automatically activated every time the ignition is turned on.

If the vehicle is stopped (e.g., at traffic lights or in traffic), the engine will turn off (unless it is required to support other vehicle systems). A warning lamp will illuminate. See 45,

INTELLIGENT STOP/START (GREEN). When a drive gear is selected and the brake is released, the engine will re-start automatically.

To activate an automatic engine stop, stop the vehicle from a speed greater than 4 km/h (2.5 mph) and apply sufficient brake pressure to make sure the vehicle is stationary.

To activate an automatic engine restart, release the brake pedal with transmission **D** or **S** selected.

The engine will also re-start if one of the following occurs:

- Intelligent stop/start is deactivated.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed.
- A shift paddle is used to select a gear.
- Transmission **R** is selected.
- Climate control system demand increases.
- The vehicle's speed exceeds approximately 1 km/h (0.5 mph).
- The battery charge becomes low.
- The brake vacuum has been reduced (e.g., using the brake pedal repeatedly with the engine off).
- The steering wheel is turned from the straight ahead position excessively.

The following conditions will prevent an automatic engine stop:

- A shift paddle has been used to select a gear.

- The external temperature is less than approximately 0°C (32°F).
- The external temperature is more than approximately 40°C (104°F).
- The engine has not reached operating temperature.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The Climate control system demand requires the engine to be running (for example, in Defrost mode).
- The battery charge is low.
- The bonnet is opened.
- Intelligent stop/start is deactivated.
- Diesel particulate filter (DPF) regeneration is in progress or has been requested.

To prevent the vehicle from being inadvertently left in a driveable condition, the ignition will automatically turn off if the following occurs while transmission **D** or **S** is selected:

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- Then the brake pedal is released.

The ignition will also turn off if transmission **N** or **P** is selected and the driver's seatbelt is then unfastened.

The vehicle must be restarted as normal.

DEACTIVATING INTELLIGENT STOP/START

To switch the system off, press the **ECO** switch.

Note: The engine will restart automatically if the switch is pressed while an automatic engine stop is in progress.

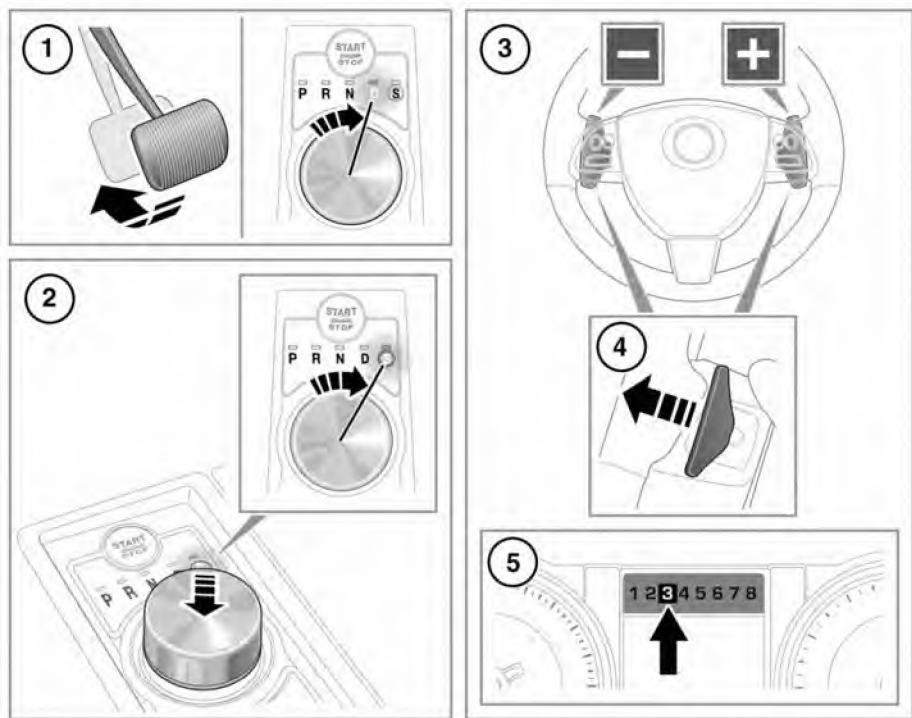


To confirm that the system is switched off, the Intelligent stop/start system off symbol illuminates in the Message centre and the message **ECO Stop/Start Off** is momentarily displayed.

The Intelligent stop/start system off symbol also illuminates if there is a system fault. If the **ECO** switch is pressed while there is a fault, the message **ECO Stop Start Unavailable** is displayed in the Message centre.

Note: *After an engine switch off and restart, Intelligent stop/start will default to on.*

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



E143650

The rotary gear selector elevates out of the centre console when the engine is started, in readiness for gear selection.

1. To select Drive (**D**) or Reverse (**R**) gear, press the brake pedal and then turn the rotary gear selector.
2. To select Sport (**S**) mode, from **D** press the rotary gear selector down and rotate to **S**.
3. Manual mode gear shift paddles (left paddle for downshifts, right paddle for upshifts).

Note: The gear shift paddles can be configured to operate in '**S only**' or '**D and S only**' via the **Security/Vehicle** menu, in the Touch screen **Setup** menu. See 64, **TOUCH SCREEN SETUP**.

4. Pull briefly to change gear. Pull the left side paddle to shift down a gear or the right side paddle to shift up a gear. To exit Manual mode, either pull and hold the shift-up paddle for approximately 1 second (to return directly to automatic operation in **D** or **S**), or if in **S**, turn the rotary gear selector to the **D** position.

5. The selected gear is displayed at the top of the Message centre when using manual gear selection. When Sport mode is in use, the Message centre will display the currently selected gear inside a large circle.

- (!) Never select the Park (P) position while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.
- (!) Never select the R position while the vehicle is in forward motion. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.
- (!) Never select a forward gear while the vehicle is moving backwards. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.
- (!) Do not rev the engine or allow it to run above normal idle speed while selecting D or R, or while the vehicle is stationary with any gear selected. Doing so can result in serious transmission and/or engine damage.
- (!) Do not allow the vehicle to remain stationary with a drive gear selected and the engine running. Always select P or Neutral (N) if the engine is to idle for a prolonged period. The vehicle may move unexpectedly with any other gear position selected.

ROTARY GEAR SELECTOR

Transmission P should be selected before switching off the engine. However, it is possible to switch the engine off with R, D or S selected - the gear selector will automatically select P, while retracting into the centre console.



To avoid injury, before exiting the vehicle, always make sure that the rotary gear selector is in the P position, the engine is turned off, the Parking brake is applied, and the Smart key is removed from the vehicle.

Note: If the engine is switched off with transmission N selected, the system will wait for 10 minutes before selecting P. This procedure is to allow the vehicle to be conveyed through a car wash only and should not be used for vehicle recovery purposes.

In the event of a vehicle breakdown, the transmission will automatically select P. This prevents the vehicle from being towed on all 4 wheels, therefore, vehicle recovery should only be undertaken by suitably qualified personnel.

MANUAL GEAR SELECTION

Supercharged vehicles: Manual gear selection (using the gear shift paddles) is available in both D (temporary Manual mode) and S.

Non Supercharged vehicles: Manual gear selection is only available in S.

Operation: When in Manual mode, pull the left side paddle to shift down a gear or the right side paddle to shift up a gear.

There are 2 methods of exiting Manual mode:

1. Pull and hold the right side paddle for approximately 1 second to return directly to automatic operation.
2. Rotate the gear selector from S to the D position.

Temporary manual gear selection: When the gear selector is in the D position on Supercharged vehicles, Manual mode may be directly accessed by the single action of operating the steering wheel mounted shift paddles.

If continued use of Manual mode is required, the gear selector may be subsequently moved to the **S** position to enter permanent Manual mode.

A Gear shift indicator will illuminate green, briefly, in the message centre, at the recommended (up-shift) gear change point. See **42, GEAR SHIFT (GREEN)**.

If the gear selector remains in the **D** position, temporary Manual mode will be held while the driver is accelerating, decelerating, cornering, or continuing to request shifts via the paddles.

 When transmission **S** is selected and Dynamic mode is used, transmission up-shifts are fully controlled by the driver. See **87, DYNAMIC MODE**. This means that the transmission will not change up a gear automatically, even when the engine's revolution speed limit is reached.

LIMP-HOME MODE

Note: *The driver should be aware that the vehicle's performance will be reduced and must take this into account when driving. Also the use of the gear shift paddles will be disabled. In this event, seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.*

In the event of an electrical or mechanical failure, transmission operation will be limited. **P, R, N, D** and **S** may still be used to enable the vehicle to be driven to a safe area.

Some faults will cause the selector to be locked in to position until the ignition is switched off. If the selected range flashes, it signifies that the driver request cannot be engaged. Re-select **N** and repeat the attempt.

If the transmission is still unable to select the requested gear, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)



Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is unable to compensate for driver misjudgement. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention, in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants and the other road users.

DSC is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on. It controls vehicle stability in critical driving situations. Additionally, it identifies unstable driving behaviour, such as understeer or oversteer, and helps to keep the vehicle under control by manipulating the engine power output and applying the brakes at individual wheels. Some noise may be generated when the brakes are applied.

If wheel spin is detected, the system will intervene to control it by reducing engine power output and applying the brakes at individual wheels. This action will help to improve acceleration.

Also see, **44, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)**.

WINTER MODE

Winter mode enhances stability of the vehicle to suit slippery conditions, when grip is reduced. This helps the vehicle to perform in a more gentle and controlled manner, to avoid skidding, allowing more confident progress under adverse conditions.



Press to operate. Designed for use in slippery conditions. When active, Winter mode selects 2nd gear for driving away on level ground (no incline), softens the responsiveness of the engine, and modifies the gear change strategy. This makes sure that enhanced traction is maintained.

Note: Winter mode cannot be active at the same time as Dynamic mode. Winter mode will remain selected indefinitely, even after the ignition is switched off. Winter mode must be deselected, if no longer required.

DYNAMIC MODE

Dynamic mode enhances key vehicle systems so that the vehicle's full potential can be exploited. The vehicle's responses are aimed at involving the driver more in focused and purposeful driving.



Press to operate. Dynamic mode coordinates the vehicle's control systems to deliver a high performance driving experience.

Note: When the transmission is set to permanent Manual mode and Dynamic mode is selected, transmission upshifts are fully controlled by the driver. The transmission will not change up automatically, even when the rev limit is reached (the gear position indicator in the Message centre will glow amber, to indicate that the next gear should be selected).

Note: Dynamic mode cannot be active at the same time as Winter mode. Dynamic mode will remain selected for approximately 6 hours after the ignition is switched off, after which point it will need to be reselected, if required.

TRACDSC

⚠ Vehicle safety may be reduced by inappropriate use of TracDSC. TracDSC should only be used in suitable conditions.

Stability control

TracDSC is an alternative setting of DSC, with reduced system interventions. With TracDSC engaged, traction may be increased, although stability may be reduced compared to normal DSC. TracDSC is intended for use only on dry tarmac, by suitably experienced drivers. TracDSC should not be selected for other surfaces or by drivers with insufficient skill and training to operate the vehicle safely with the TracDSC function engaged.

SWITCHING BETWEEN DSC AND TRACDSC



Press and hold the DSC switch for less than 10 seconds (3 seconds for XFR-S). The Message centre will temporarily display either **TracDSC** or **DSC ON**.

- The warning lamp in the Instrument panel will illuminate while TracDSC is selected.
- The warning lamp will flash when DSC or TracDSC is active (Cruise control will automatically disengage if this occurs).

SWITCHING DSC OFF

- Press and hold the DSC switch for more than 10 seconds (3 seconds for XFR-S).
- The Message centre will display **DSC OFF** and a short warning chime will sound.
- The **DSC OFF** warning lamp in the Instrument panel will illuminate.

SWITCHING DSC ON

- Press and release the DSC switch.
- The DSC system will switch on and the Message centre will temporarily display **DSC ON**.
- The **DSC OFF** warning lamp in the Instrument panel will be extinguished.

Note: Switching the engine off and then on again, will always revert the DSC status to **DSC ON**, regardless of which mode is selected.

ACTIVE DIFFERENTIAL CONTROL (Supercharged vehicles only)

The Active differential control (E-diff) improves traction on uneven road surfaces and can also improve stability in oversteer situations.

If the warning message **EDIFF SYSTEM FAULT** is displayed and DSC is off, then TracDSC will be automatically selected. The vehicle can still be driven and DSC modes can be selected, but seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

If the warning message **EDIFF NOT AVAILABLE** is displayed, the system has temporarily shut down to prevent overheating. The vehicle can still be driven and the E-diff will be operational again when the system has cooled sufficiently.

ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS

Not available with All wheel drive vehicles.

If the general warning lamp illuminates and the message **ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS FAULT** is displayed in the Message centre, some reduction in ride comfort may be experienced. See **43, WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS**. If the fault persists, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

- ⚠ Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while the vehicle is in motion.**
- ⚠ Never allow the vehicle to coast (freewheel) with the engine turned off. The engine must be running to provide full braking assistance. The brakes will still function with the engine off, but far more pressure will be required to operate them.**
- ⚠ If the red brake warning lamp illuminates, safely bring the vehicle to a stop, as quickly as possible and seek qualified assistance.**
- ⚠ Never place non-approved floor matting or any other obstructions under the pedals. This restricts pedal travel and braking efficiency.**

Driving through heavy rain or water can have an adverse effect on braking efficiency. Under such circumstances, it is recommended that you lightly apply the brakes intermittently, to dry the brakes.

EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)

If the driver rapidly applies the brakes, EBA automatically boosts the braking force to its maximum, in order to bring the vehicle to a halt as quickly as possible. If the driver applies the brakes slowly, but conditions mean that ABS operates on the front wheels, EBA will increase the braking force in order to apply ABS control to the rear wheels.

EBA stops operating as soon as the brake pedal is released.

A fault with the EBA system is indicated by the brake warning lamp illuminating and an associated warning message. See **43, BRAKE (RED)**. Drive with care, avoiding heavy brake application and seek qualified assistance.

ELECTRONIC BRAKE FORCE DISTRIBUTION (EBD)

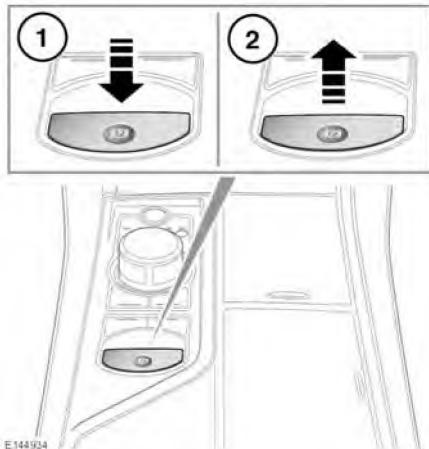
EBD controls the balance of braking forces supplied to the front and rear wheels, in order to maintain maximum braking efficiency.

If the vehicle has a light load (only the driver in the vehicle, for example), EBD will reduce the braking force applied to the rear wheels. If the vehicle is heavily laden, EBD will allow greater braking force to the rear wheels.

A fault with the EBD system is indicated by the brake warning lamp illuminating and an associated warning message. See **43, BRAKE (RED)**. Gently and safely stop the vehicle and seek qualified assistance.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB)

- ⚠ The parking brakes operate on the rear wheels, and therefore, secure parking of the vehicle is dependent on being on a hard and stable surface.**
- ⚠ Do not rely on the EPB to operate effectively, if the rear wheels have been immersed in mud or water.**



1. With the ignition turned on, press the brake pedal and press down on the EPB switch. This will release the EPB.
2. With the vehicle stationary, pull up the EPB and release it to apply the EPB. The Parking brake warning lamp illuminates to indicate that the EPB is applied. See 43, BRAKE (RED).

If the switch is operated when the vehicle's speed is less than 3 km/h (2 mph), the vehicle will be brought to an abrupt stop. The stop lamps will not be illuminated.

The EPB will be applied automatically if the ignition is switched off and the vehicle's speed is below 3 km/h (2 mph), unless transmission **P** is selected. To prevent automatic operation, when the vehicle is stationary, press and hold the EPB switch in the release position. Within 5 seconds, switch off the ignition and continue to hold the EPB switch for a further 2 seconds.

 Driving the vehicle with the EPB applied, or repeated use of the EPB to slow the vehicle, may cause serious damage to the brake system.

In an emergency, with the vehicle travelling at more than 3 km/h (2 mph), pulling on the EPB switch and holding gives a gradual reduction in the speed, as long as the accelerator pedal is released. The brake warning lamp will illuminate accompanied by a warning tone and a warning message in the Message centre. The stop lamps will illuminate.

If the vehicle is stationary with the EPB applied and transmission **D** or **R** is selected, pressing the accelerator will gradually release the EPB and allow the vehicle to drive away smoothly.

Note: Automatic release of the EPB is only possible when the driver's door is closed, or the driver's seat belt is buckled.

If the accelerator is not pressed after a gear is selected and the vehicle tries to move, EPB will initially begin its gradual release. Full load will then be automatically applied to the EPB. To override the automatic release feature, manually apply the EPB after selecting a gear.

At the start of a journey, EPB release times may be extended when changing from transmission **P** or **N**. This is to allow for increased gear engagement times.

If the system detects a fault with the EPB, the amber brake warning lamp will illuminate accompanied by a message in the Message centre.

If the system detects a fault while the EPB is operating, the red Parking brake warning lamp will flash, accompanied by a message in the Message centre.

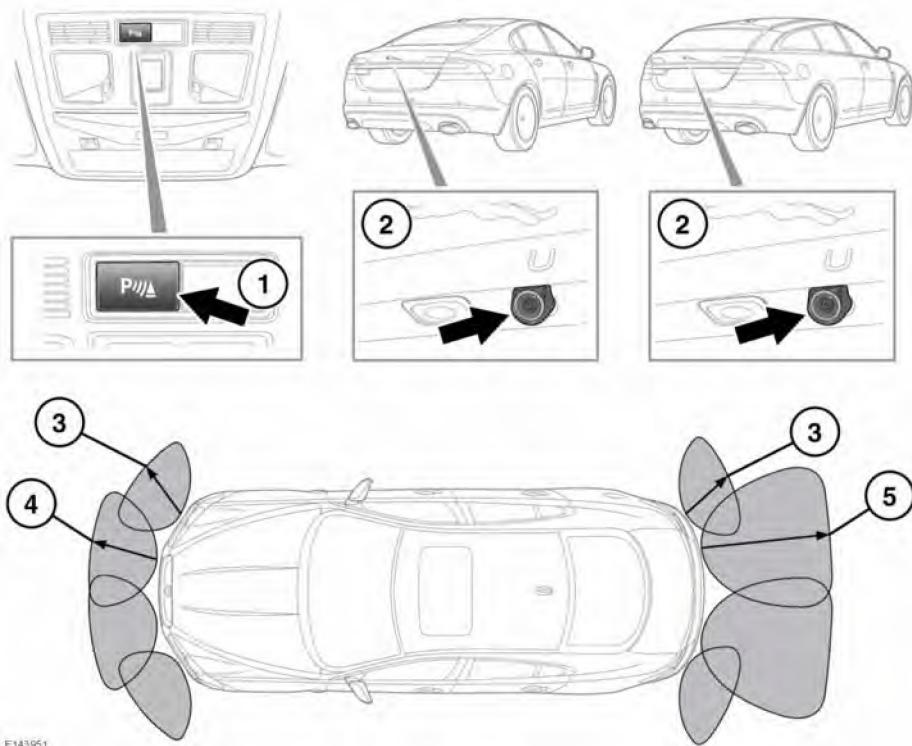
Note: The red Parking brake warning lamp will continue to be illuminated for at least 10 seconds after the ignition has been turned off.

EMERGENCY STOP SIGNAL (ESS)

ESS automatically activates the hazard warning lamps during emergency braking, to warn other road users and reduce the risk of a collision.

Parking aids

USING THE PARKING AID



E143951

⚠ **Parking aids may not detect moving objects, such as children and animals, until they are dangerously close. Always use extreme caution when manoeuvring.**

⚠ **Parking aid sensors may not detect some obstructions (e.g., narrow posts or small objects close to the ground).**

⚠ **If accessories are fitted to the rear of the vehicle, particular care must be taken when reversing. The rear sensors will only indicate the distance from the bumper to the obstacle.**

⚠ **It remains the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them. Some overhanging objects, barriers, chain link fences, small children, animals, thin obstructions, or painted surfaces, may not be detected by the system.**

Note: *The rear sensors are automatically disabled when a trailer is connected.*

1. **Parking aid switch:** Press to turn on and off.
2. **Rear camera:** See **93, REAR CAMERA**.
3. **Approximately 600 mm (24 in) detection range.**

4. Approximately 800 mm (31 in) detection range.
5. Approximately 1800 mm (71 in) detection range.

When transmission **R** is selected, the front and rear parking sensors are activated automatically and the switch indicator will illuminate.

To manually activate the front sensors, press the switch. The switch indicator will illuminate. The front sensors will remain active for as long as the vehicle's forward speed does not exceed 16 km/h (10 mph).

To turn off the Parking aids while active, press the switch. The switch indicator will extinguish.

Selecting **N** from **R** will keep front and rear sensors active.

When objects are detected, the Parking aids emit a warning tone which increases in frequency as the vehicle gets closer to the object, and then becomes constant when the obstacle is within 300 mm (12 inches).

PARKING AID SYSTEM FAULT

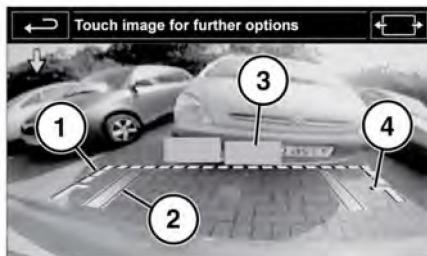
If a system fault is detected, a long high-pitched tone will sound, and the switch indicator will flash. Contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

REAR CAMERA



It remains the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them when reversing.

The Rear camera provides a rear-view image, to assist in reversing the vehicle. When transmission **R** is selected, the screen automatically displays a wide angle, colour image from the rear of your vehicle. Overlaid on the image are reversing guidelines.



E161393

1. Dotted guidance line: The safe working width of the vehicle (including exterior mirrors).
2. Solid guidance line: The projected path based on current steering wheel position.
3. Park Distance Control (PDC) graphics: A coloured area appears, to indicate which rear sensor(s) has been activated.
4. Rear access guidance line: Do not reverse beyond this point if rear access is required.

! Some overhanging objects or barriers, which could cause damage to the vehicle, may not be detected by the Rear camera.

Note: A return icon is displayed on the Touch screen. Touch this to revert to the previously viewed screen.

Rear camera display on the Touch screen will discontinue when either of the following apply:

- Transmission **D** is selected for longer than 15 seconds.
- Transmission **D** is selected and/or the vehicle's speed is greater than 18 km/h (11 mph).

Automatic speed limiter (ASL)

ASL CONTROLS

 In certain conditions, such as a steep downhill gradient, the vehicle's speed may exceed the set speed limit. This is because engine braking is unable to maintain or reduce the vehicle speed.

The ASL switch is located next to the rotary gear selector. The ASL button switches between Cruise control and the Automatic speed limiter. The systems cannot be used simultaneously. The ASL warning lamp will illuminate when ASL is active. See **45, AUTOMATIC SPEED LIMITER (AMBER)**.

Note: When ASL is selected, it is active at all speeds up to the maximum vehicle speed.

Speed limits can be set between 32 km/h (20 mph) and the maximum vehicle speed minus 8 km/h (5 mph). The speed limit can also be set while the vehicle is stationary.

Use the Cruise control speed adjustment thumbwheel to set the required speed limit. The set speed limit will be displayed in the Message centre. When a speed has been set, the engine will respond normally up to the set speed.

Further accelerator pressure will not increase the speed beyond the set speed unless sudden, rapid acceleration (kickdown) is applied. If kickdown is initiated, ASL will be suspended. ASL will reactivate when the vehicle's speed drops below the set speed.

The set speed can be adjusted, at any time, using the Cruise control speed adjustment thumbwheel

Press the ACC CANCEL button to suspend ASL assistance.

To resume ASL following a cancel request, press RESUME. ASL will only resume if the vehicle's speed is less than the set speed and greater than 32 km/h (20 mph). If these criteria are not met, a message will be displayed in the Message centre.

USING CRUISE CONTROL



In certain conditions, such as a steep gradient, the vehicle's speed may exceed the set cruising speed. This is because engine braking is unable to maintain or reduce the vehicle's speed. Driver intervention may be required.



Only use Cruise control when conditions are favourable (e.g., straight, dry, open roads, with light traffic).

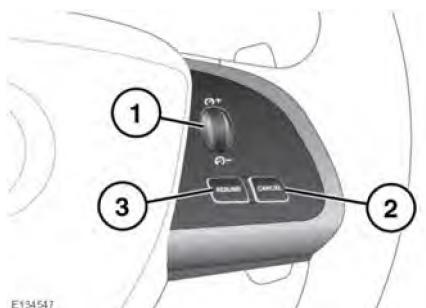


RESUME should be used only if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.

Note: If the set speed is exceeded for more than 5 minutes by use of the accelerator, Cruise control will be cancelled.

The driver can also intervene, at any time, by use of the brake or accelerator pedals.

Cruise control will switch off and clear the memory when the ignition is switched off.



1. Set speed +/-: Roll the thumbwheel up or down to adjust the set speed. The set speed will be confirmed in the Message centre. The cruising speed can also be increased using the accelerator. When the desired speed is reached, roll the set speed control upwards to set and maintain the new speed. Release the accelerator.

Note: Cruise control can only be engaged at speeds in excess of 32 km/h (20 mph).

2. **CANCEL:** Press to cancel, but retain the set speed in the memory. Cruise control will also be cancelled if: the brake pedal is pressed, the rotary gear selector is moved to **N** or **R**, or if Dynamic mode is activated.
3. **RESUME:** Press to resume the set speed.

Adaptive cruise control

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system is designed to aid the driver to maintain a gap from the vehicle ahead, or a set road speed if there is no slower vehicle ahead.

ACC is not a collision warning or avoidance system.

ACC will not react to:

- Stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).
- Pedestrians or objects in the roadway.
- Oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

The ACC system uses a radar sensor, which projects a beam directly forward of the vehicle, to detect objects ahead.

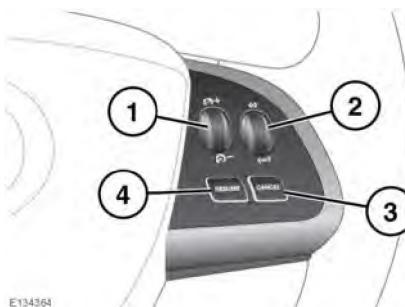
The radar sensor is mounted behind the bumper cover, to provide a clear view forward for the radar beam.

- Only use ACC when conditions are favourable (i.e., main roads with free flowing traffic).
- Do not use in poor visibility, specifically fog, heavy rain, spray, or snow.
- Do not use on icy or slippery roads.
- It is the driver's responsibility to stay alert, drive safely and be in control of the vehicle at all times.
- Keep the front of the vehicle free from dirt, metal badges or objects, including vehicle front protectors, which may prevent the sensor from operating.
- Do not use ACC when entering or leaving a motorway.

USING ACC

The system is operated by controls mounted on the steering wheel. The driver can also intervene, at any time, by use of the brake or accelerator pedals.

Setting the vehicle's speed, activating and deactivating ACC is done in the same way as using Cruise control. See 95, **USING CRUISE CONTROL**.



1. Set: $+$ / $-$: Roll the thumbwheel upward or downwards to increase or decrease speed, until the desired speed is achieved.
2. Gap control: 4 settings are selectable by rolling the thumbwheel.
3. **CANCEL**: Cancels but retains the set speed in the memory.
4. **RESUME**: Resumes the ACC set speed after it has been disengaged.

ENTERING FOLLOW MODE



When in Follow mode, the vehicle will not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor will the vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a collision.

Note: Follow mode is an integral function of ACC. You cannot disengage Follow mode and still use Cruise control to maintain your speed.

Once a set speed has been selected, the driver can release the accelerator and the set road speed will be maintained.

If a vehicle ahead enters the same lane, or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, your vehicle's speed will be adjusted automatically until the gap to the vehicle ahead corresponds to the gap setting. The vehicle is now in Follow mode.

An amber warning lamp in the Instrument panel will illuminate. See 45, **ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (AMBER)**.

The Message centre will display the gap set in the form of a vehicle with a varying number of bars in front of it.

The vehicle will then maintain the constant time gap to the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle ahead moves out of lane or out of view.
- A new gap setting is chosen.

If necessary, the vehicle brakes will be automatically applied, slowing the vehicle and maintaining the gap to the vehicle in front.

The maximum braking which is applied by ACC is limited and can be overridden by the driver applying the brakes, if required.

Note: *Driver braking will cancel ACC.*

If ACC predicts that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, then an audible warning will sound while ACC continues to brake.

DRIVER INTERVENE will be displayed in the Message centre. Take immediate action.

When in Follow mode, the vehicle will automatically return to the set speed when the road ahead is clear, for instance when:

- The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed above the set speed, or changes lane.

- You change lane to either side or enter an exit lane.

The driver should intervene, if appropriate.

If a direction indicator is used, ACC will reduce the gap to the vehicle ahead so as to respond more quickly to the anticipated manoeuvre. If a manoeuvre is not actioned, the previous gap will be restored after a few seconds. Enhanced response may not occur if ACC detects that it is inappropriate, i.e., you are already too close to the vehicle ahead, or you are already in another lane.

CHANGING THE FOLLOW MODE SET GAP



It is the driver's responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

4 gap settings are available. The selected gap setting is displayed in the Message centre when the gap adjustment thumbwheel is used.

Each gap level is indicated by an additional bar in front of the vehicle icon in the Message centre. After the ignition is switched on, the default gap (gap 3) will be automatically selected, ready for ACC operation.

OVERRIDING THE SPEED AND FOLLOW MODE



Whenever the driver is overriding the ACC by depressing the accelerator pedal, the ACC will not automatically apply the brakes to maintain separation from any vehicle ahead.

Adaptive cruise control

The set speed and gap can be overridden by pressing the accelerator pedal when cruising at a constant speed or in Follow mode. If the vehicle is in Follow mode, the warning lamp will go out when the ACC is overridden by the driver using the accelerator and **CRUISE OVERRIDE** will be displayed in the Message centre. When the accelerator is released, the ACC function will operate again and the vehicle's speed will decrease to the set speed, or a lower speed if Follow mode is active.

AUTOMATIC LOW SPEED SWITCH-OFF

If the speed of the vehicle decreases below 32 km/h (20 mph), the ACC system will automatically switch off Follow mode and the amber warning lamp will go out.

If the brakes were being applied by the ACC system, they will be slowly released.

This will be accompanied by an audible warning and **DRIVER INTERVENE** will be displayed on the Message centre. The driver must take control.

ACC AUTO OFF

ACC will disengage, but not clear the memory when:

- The **CANCEL** control is pressed.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Transmission **N**, **P** or **R** is selected.
- Dynamic stability control activates.

ACC will disengage and clear the memory when:

- The ignition system is switched off.
- The maximum vehicle speed is reached.
- A fault occurs in the ACC system.

RESUMING THE SPEED AND FOLLOW MODE

 **RESUME** should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.

By pressing the **RESUME** control after ACC has been cancelled, for example, after braking, ACC will become active again provided that the set speed memory has not been erased. The original set speed will be resumed (unless a vehicle ahead causes the Follow mode to become active) and the set speed will be displayed in the Message centre for 4 seconds.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ACC

The system acts by regulating the speed of the vehicle using engine control and the brakes. Gear changes may occur in response to deceleration or acceleration while in ACC.

During some situations, ACC may provide the driver with an indication that intervention is required.

An audible alarm will sound, accompanied by the message **DRIVER INTERVENE** in the Message centre if the ACC detects:

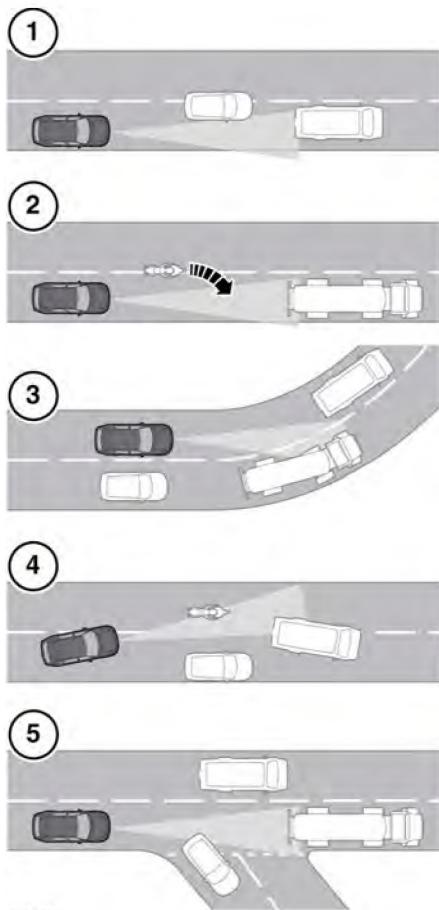
- A failure has occurred while the system is active.
- That using maximum ACC braking only is not sufficient.

Note: ACC operates when the transmission is in **S** or **D** position.

Note: When engaged, the accelerator pedal rests in the raised position. Fully release the pedal to allow normal ACC operation.

Note: When braking is applied by the ACC, the vehicle brake lamps will illuminate.

DETECTION BEAM ISSUES



E142911

Detection issues can occur:

1. When driving on a different line to the vehicle in front.
2. When a vehicle edges into your lane. The vehicle will only be detected once it has moved fully into your lane.

3. There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when going into and coming out of a bend.
4. When moving around a stationary vehicle. This may cause uncertainty as to which vehicle should be followed.
5. When the vehicle ahead turns out of your lane. This may cause uncertainty as to which vehicle should be followed.

In these situations, ACC may operate unexpectedly. The driver should stay alert and intervene, if necessary.

ACC MALFUNCTION

If a malfunction occurs during operation of the system in Cruise or Follow mode, the ACC system will switch off and cannot be used until the fault is cleared. The message **DRIVER INTERVENE** appears briefly and is then replaced by the message **CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE**. If malfunction of the ACC or any related system occurs at any other time, the message **CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE** will be displayed. It will not be possible to activate the ACC system in any mode.

Accumulations of dirt, snow, or ice on the sensor or cover may inhibit ACC operation. Fitting of a vehicle front protector or metallised badges may also affect ACC operation.

The ACC system relies on its radar to detect objects and constantly scans ahead. If the radar detects no objects ahead in ACC or Follow mode, then the ACC will be deactivated, the audible alarm will sound, and the message **DRIVER INTERVENE** displays briefly. The message **ACC SENSOR BLOCKED** will then be displayed.

The same messages may also be displayed while driving on open roads with few objects for the radar to detect.

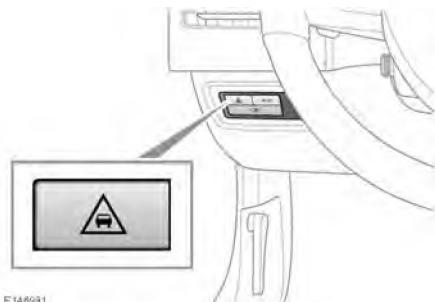
Adaptive cruise control

Clearing the obstruction allows the system to return to normal operation. If the obstruction is present when ACC is inactive (e.g., on initial starting or with the ACC system switched off), the message **ACC SENSOR BLOCKED** will be displayed.

Tyres other than those recommended for your vehicle, may have different sizes. This can affect the correct operation of the ACC.

FORWARD ALERT FUNCTION

- ⚠ The system may not react to slow moving vehicles.**
- ⚠ Forward alert uses the same radar sensor as Adaptive cruise control. The same performance limitations apply.**



Press the button to switch Forward alert on or off.

A warning lamp in the Instrument panel will illuminate when Forward alert is switched on. See 45, **FORWARD ALERT (AMBER)**.

Forward alert provides limited detection and warning of objects close ahead while the vehicle is moving forwards. If a vehicle or object ahead is within the user defined sensitivity area, a warning tone will sound and the **FORWARD ALERT** message will be displayed in the Message centre. Advanced emergency brake assist will be activated. See 100, **ADVANCED EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST**.

The Forward alert system does not initiate any action. The driver must take appropriate action immediately

Sensitivity of the function can be adjusted only when Adaptive cruise control is disengaged. Adjust as follows:

- Using the steering wheel controls, roll the gap adjustment thumbwheel downwards to decrease the sensitivity of the alert.
- Roll the gap adjustment thumbwheel upwards to increase the sensitivity of the alert.

Note: The Forward alert set gap is retained when the ignition is switched off.

FORWARD ALERT is displayed in the Message centre.

ADVANCED EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST

- ⚠ The system may not react to slow moving vehicles, and will not react to stationary vehicles or vehicles travelling in the opposite direction.**
- ⚠ Warnings may not appear if the distance to the vehicle ahead is very small or if steering wheel or pedal movements are large (e.g., to avoid a collision).**
- ⚠ The system utilises the same radar sensor as ACC and Forward alert - the same limitations of performance apply.**

When Adaptive cruise control is fitted, Advanced emergency brake assist is available at speeds above approximately 7 km/h (5 mph) and will function even if Forward alert and Adaptive cruise control are switched off. It improves braking response during emergency braking, when a moving vehicle is detected close ahead.

If the risk of a collision increases after the **FORWARD ALERT** warning is displayed, Advanced emergency brake assist is activated. The brakes are automatically applied gently in preparation for rapid braking (this may be noticeable). If the brake pedal is then pressed quickly, full braking is implemented, even if only light pressure is applied to the pedal. See **90, EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)**.

Note: Braking performance will only be improved if the driver applies the brakes.

If there is a fault with the system, **FORWARD ALERT UNAVAILABLE** is displayed in the Message centre. The vehicle can still be driven and the braking system will still operate, but without Advanced emergency brake assistance. Consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer to have the fault rectified.

INTELLIGENT EMERGENCY BRAKING

 **The system may not react to slow moving vehicles.**

 **The system will not react to stationary vehicles, or vehicles that are not travelling in the same direction as your vehicle.**

 **Warnings and automatic braking may not occur if the distance to the vehicle ahead is very small, or if the steering wheel and pedal movements are large (to avoid a collision, for example).**

 **IEB (Intelligent Emergency Braking) uses the same radar sensor as Adaptive Cruise Control and Forward Alert. The same performance limitations apply, see **96, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW**.**

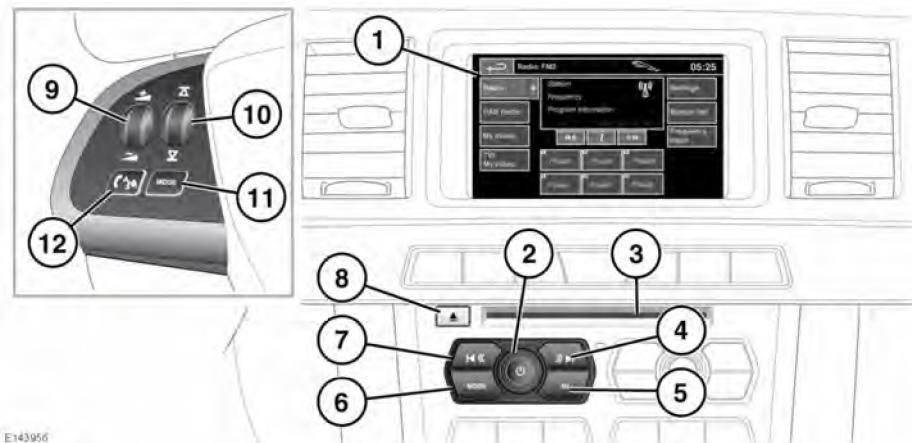
When Adaptive cruise control is fitted, Intelligent emergency braking (IEB) is available at all speeds and will function even if Adaptive cruise control and Forward alert are switched off. The purpose of IEB is to reduce the impact speed with a slower vehicle ahead when a collision becomes unavoidable.

If an imminent risk of collision occurs, an audible warning is given. If a collision becomes unavoidable, IEB will apply the brakes at up to maximum pressure. After IEB has activated, **IEB System Was Activated** is displayed in the Message centre and the system is inhibited from further operation until reset by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

If the radar sensor is blocked, by snow or heavy rain, for example, or there is a fault with the system, **IEB Not Available** is displayed in the Message centre. The vehicle can still be driven and the braking system will still operate, but without IEB. If the radar sensor is not considered to be blocked, consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Audio/video overview

AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS



In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust, or view the system when it is safe to do so.



Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

1. Touch screen.
2. Press to switch the Audio system on/off. Rotate to adjust volume level.

Note: The Audio system will operate with the ignition on or off, but will always switch off when the ignition is switched off. Switch the audio on again, if required.

Note: If the volume is turned to zero while a Compact Disc (CD) is playing, the CD will pause play. Play will resume when a greater volume is selected.

3. CD/DVD loading slot. The player will accommodate 1 disc at a time. With Stored CD, the content of up to 10 CDs can be uploaded into the memory. Only Compact Disc Digital Audio (CDDA) discs can be uploaded into the Stored CD.

Only discs with CDDA tracks and no other type, can be uploaded to the Stored CD store. Insert a disc into the loading slot until resistance is felt. The player mechanism will complete the loading.

4. Seek up. Short press:

- To select the next radio preset.
- To select the next track on the chosen audio source - CD, MP3, etc.
- To select the next TV channel on the channel list or the next DVD chapter.
- When a paired telephone is in use, press to scroll up lists of calls or phonebook entries.

Long press:

- To manually seek up the frequency to the next radio station or to scan forwards through the current audio source track.

With manual seek mode activated, further short presses will change the radio frequency in single increments. A further long press will scan forwards through the current waveband until the button is released.

5. **AUDIO VIDEO**: Press for direct access to the **Audio/Video** menu.
6. **MODE**: Press repeatedly to scroll through all Audio/Video sources.
7. Seek down. Short press:
 - To select the previous radio preset.
 - To select the previous track or start of current track on the chosen audio source - CD, MP3, etc.
 - To select the previous TV channel on the channel list or the previous DVD chapter.
 - When a paired telephone is in use, press to scroll down lists of calls or phonebook entries.

Long press:

- to manually seek down the frequency to the next radio station or to skip backwards through the current audio source track.

8. CD/Digital Versatile Disc (DVD) eject button.
9. Rotate to adjust volume for any source.
10. Rotate and release repeatedly to scroll through:
 - The radio presets.
 - The previous track or the start of the next track on the chosen audio source - CD, MP3, etc.
11. **MODE**: Press repeatedly to scroll through all the Audio/Video sources.
12. Press to mute/un-mute audio when Telephone is not fitted. If Telephone is fitted, see **126, TELEPHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.

AUDIO SETTINGS

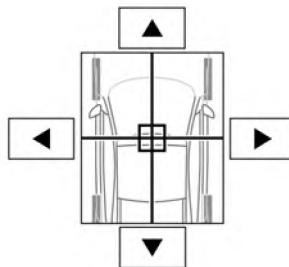
To view the Audio settings menu, select the **Audio settings** soft key on the **Home** menu screen. See **102, AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS**.

To adjust the sound settings:

1. Touch the + or - soft keys to adjust the bass, treble or subwoofer levels.
2. If surround sound is fitted, touch **DPLIIx**, **DTS Neo:6**, **Meridian Trifield**, or select **Off** to switch surround sound off.

Note: Surround sound options are not available for certain sources where the surround sound mode is set automatically.

To adjust balance and fade:



1. From the **Audio settings** menu, select **Balance/Fade**.
2. Touch the arrow soft keys to move the sound focal point to the desired area of the vehicle. Alternatively, touch the sound focal point and 'drag' it to the required position.

LOADING DISCS

-  Do not force the disc into the slot.
-  Do not use irregular shaped CDs or DVDs and those with a scratch protection film or self-adhesive label attached.

Audio/video overview

- ! The CD unit will play compact discs that conform to the international Red Book standard audio specification. Playback of CDs not conforming to this standard cannot be guaranteed.
- ! Recordable (CD-R) discs and re-writable (CD-RW) discs may not function correctly.
- ! Recordable (DVD-R or DVD+R) discs may not function correctly.
- ! Dual format, dual-sided discs (DVD Plus, CD-DVD format) are thicker than normal CDs and so playback cannot be guaranteed and jamming may occur.

Use only high quality 12 cm (4.7 in.) circular discs.

The unit will play Compact Disc Digital Audio (CDDA) discs, MP3, WMA, WAV and AAC files.

The player will accommodate one CD or DVD disc at a time but up to 10 CDs can be uploaded onto the virtual CD store.

Only CDDA discs can be loaded onto the virtual CD store.

LICENSING



E135227



E145345



E145346



E132539

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories.

Dolby, Pro Logic, and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.



Digital Surround | Neo:6

E132540



Digital Surround | Neo:X

E145347

Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent #'s: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535; 7,003,467 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS, the Symbol, and Neo:6 are registered trademarks, & DTS Digital Surround and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



E132541



E132542

Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent #’s: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS and the Symbol are registered trademarks, & DTS 2.0+ Digital Out and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



E132543

DivX Certified® to play DivX® video. DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logos are registered trademarks of DivX, Inc. and are used under license.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO: DivX® is a digital video format created by DivX, Inc. This is an official DivX Certified device that plays DivX video. Visit www.divx.com for more information and software tools to convert your files into DivX video.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) content. To generate the registration code, locate the DivX VOD section in the device setup menu.

1. Follow the route, Home Menu - Audio Video - TV/My video - Settings - VOD.

2. An eight digit code will be displayed. This is your unique DivX code. Make a note of this code and keep it for future reference.

Go to <http://vod.divx.com> with this code to complete the registration process and learn more about DivX VOD.

Covered by one or more of the following U.S. Patents: 7,295,673; 7,460,668; 7,515,710; 7,519,274.



E132544

Music and video recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit www.gracenote.com.

CD, DVD, Blu-ray Disc, and music and video-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDBB, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

Audio/video overview

Japan only

This product uses copyright protection technology, and Rovi corporation and other copyright holders are protected by the patent laws of the United States and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology requires authorization from Rovi corporation. Further, without special authorization from Rovi corporation, use is restricted to the home and other private appreciation. Reverse engineering and disassembly are prohibited.

GRACENOTE® END USER LICENSING AGREEMENT

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

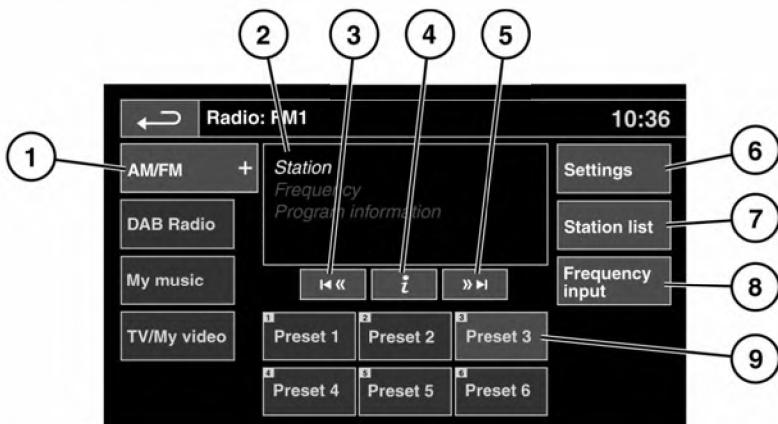
The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from in the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© Gracenote, Inc. 2009

RADIO CONTROLS



E155696



In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.



Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

See 102, AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS.

1. Touch **Radio** to display the **AM/FM** waveband selection soft key. Touch to view and select a waveband. Touch again to close. The waveband selection box will close automatically after 5 seconds without use.
2. Displays information about the current station.
3. Seek down:
 - Short touch to auto seek down the frequency to the next radio station.
 - Long touch to activate manual seek mode. Further short touches change the frequency in single decrements. A further long touch will scan backwards through the current waveband until the soft key is released.

Note: When manual seek is selected, auto seek cannot be selected for approximately 10 seconds.

4. Information: More information from the broadcasting station.
5. Seek up:
 - Short touch to auto seek up the frequency to the next radio station.
 - Long touch to activate manual seek mode. Further short touches change the frequency in single increments. A further long touch will scan forwards through the current waveband until the soft key is released.
6. **Settings:** Touch to view and activate/deactivate the following features: **RDS**, **Traffic**, **News**, **AF** and **REG**. See 109, **RADIO DATA SYSTEM (RDS)**.

7. **Station list** (FM only): Select to view a list of available stations on the waveband. The list can be sorted by **Frequency**, **Name** or **PTY** (pop, news, sport etc.) by selecting the appropriate soft key. Touch to select the chosen station. If the stations are sorted by category, touch the chosen category to view and select a corresponding station.
8. **Frequency input**: Select to enter a known frequency of a station on the current waveband, using the numeric keypad that appears. Select **OK** or wait for 2 seconds to tune to the entered frequency.
9. **Station presets**: Each waveband has 6 preset positions.
 - Touch and release to tune to the station stored on that preset.
 - Touch and hold to store the current station on that preset (the radio will mute while the station is stored and then beep).
 - Use the seek buttons on the steering wheel to change to the next or previous preset station.

RADIO DATA SYSTEM (RDS)

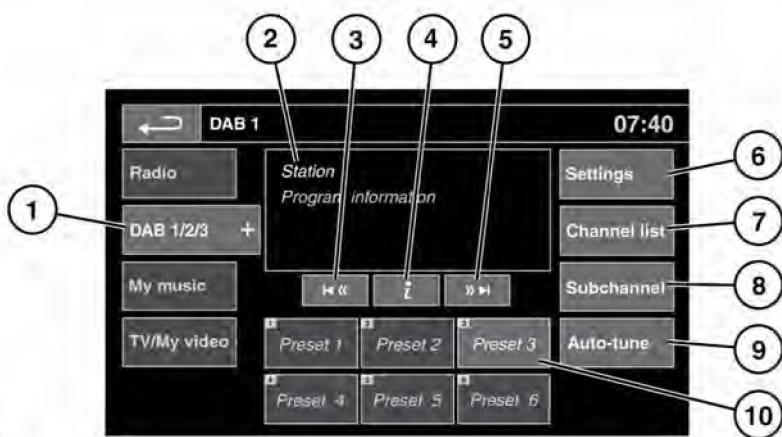
Your radio is equipped with RDS which enables the audio unit to receive additional information with normal FM radio signals.

Note: *Not all FM radio stations broadcast RDS information.*

Select **Settings** to view or alter RDS settings.

- **Traffic/News**: Provides local travel or news information.
- **Regionalisation (REG)**: Select to prevent the radio tuning into an alternative local station that has a stronger signal.

DAB RADIO CONTROLS



In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.



Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

See 102, AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS.

1. Touch **DAB Radio** to display the **DAB 1/2/3** soft key. Touch to view and select a DAB band (**DAB 1, 2 or 3**). The radio will tune to the last used channel on that band. Touch again to close.
2. Display showing the current channel, the associated ensemble and the relevant DAB radio text.
3. Seek down:
 - Short touch to seek the previous available channel.
 - Long touch to seek the previous available ensemble. The first channel in the new ensemble will be selected.

4. Channel information: Touch to view DAB text and channel information.
5. Seek up:
 - Short touch to find the next available channel.
 - Long touch to find the next available ensemble. The first channel in the new ensemble will be selected.
6. **Settings:** Touch to view the DAB Settings menu:
 - **Options:** To activate/deactivate FM Traffic and Link DAB and to alter DAB country and format settings (with the vehicle stationary).
 - **Announcements:** Select an alarm announcement and up to 3 other announcement types (traffic, news, etc.) from the list. The selected announcements will interrupt the current programme when broadcast.

7. **Channel list:** Touch to view a list of available ensembles and channels. The list can be sorted by **Ensemble**, **Channel**, **Subchannel** or by **Category**.

- If an **Ensemble** is selected from the list, all available channels from that ensemble will be displayed.
- Sorting by **Subchannel** is only available when the current channel is broadcasting subchannels.
- If **Category** is selected, touch the chosen category to view corresponding channels, before making your selection from the list.

Once the desired selection has been made, select the Back soft key to return to the main DAB menu.

8. **Subchannel:** If subchannels are broadcast by the current channel, this soft key will be active. Select to allow subchannels and then select the required subchannel with the seek down/up keys.

9. **Auto-tune:** Select to scan for all available DAB ensembles/channels. This needs to be done before using the DAB radio for the first time. Auto-tune is also useful when travelling long distances, so regional Ensembles can be tuned. During Auto-tune, a pop-up shows tuning progress. The Auto-tune process will not affect current presets, but some presets may not operate if the channel they relate to is no longer available (**No reception** displays).

10. **Station presets:** Each DAB band has 6 preset positions.

- Touch and release to tune the radio to the station stored on that preset.
- Touch and hold to store the current station on that preset (the radio will mute while the station is stored).

- Use the seek buttons on the steering wheel to select the next or previous preset station.

Note: If you attempt to select a preset channel that is now unavailable or invalid, **No reception** is displayed.

DAB RADIO SETTINGS

In **Settings**:

- If the **Link DAB** setting is switched on and the signal strength for a channel falls below an acceptable level, the audio unit will automatically search other available ensembles for a channel with the same name. If an alternative local channel is found, the new channel is played automatically after a few seconds. If the channel is not found after a few seconds, the message **No reception** is displayed. The word **Link** is displayed at the top of the Touch screen when **Link DAB** is enabled.
- Select **DAB country** if driving into another country. Scroll through the country options to choose the appropriate one. This will prompt an auto-tune.

Note: This option is disabled while the vehicle is moving.

- Choose **DAB format** if moving to a region that uses a different digital band. Available formats are:

- Band L.
- Band III.
- Band L & Band III.
- L Band Canada.
- L Band Canada & Band III.

This will prompt an auto-tune.

Note: This option is disabled while the vehicle is moving.

ENSEMBLES

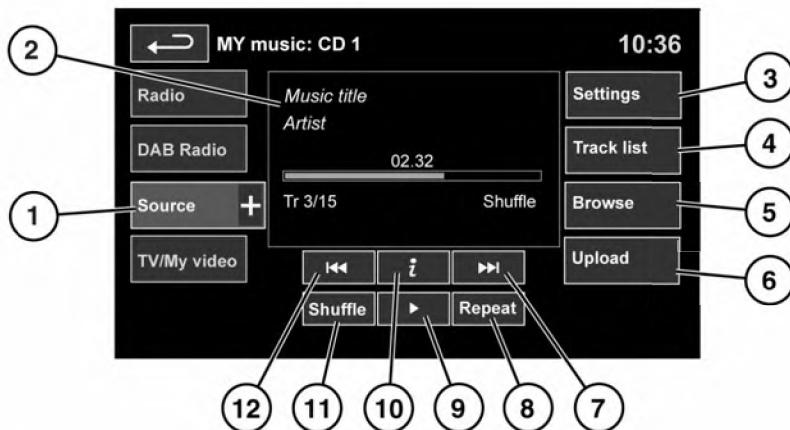
Unlike AM/FM radio, DAB transmits several channels/stations on a single frequency. A group of channels is known as an ensemble. Some channels within the ensemble may have subchannels offering several listening options.

If reception is lost when the vehicle is in motion, the vehicle may be out of range of the ensemble.

To build a new list of ensembles, select

Auto-tune.

PORTABLE MEDIA CONTROLS



E155698



Do not adjust the main audio unit's controls, or allow the system to distract the driver while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.



Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

See **102, AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS**.

My music includes CD, iPod, USB, AUX and **Bluetooth®** wireless technology devices. The full infotainment system also includes **Stored CD**.

1. Touch **My music** to display the **Source** soft key. Select an option.

Note: Sound quality and volume levels available from devices connected to the auxiliary input may vary widely.

2. Display of information about the current track, including elapsed run-time. Some of this information is also displayed in the Instrument panel.

Note: Only connected devices that support ID3 shall have the information displayed.

3. **Settings:** Select to switch traffic and news announcements on or off. Additionally, for MP3 recorded media, you can select the number of list entries that are skipped when you use the page up/down arrows when navigating a list.
4. **Track list:** Select to view the current CD or Stored CD track list. Select a track to start playback.
5. **Browse:** (iPod, USB and Stored CD modes only).
 - Select to view the contents of the connected device which are displayed as dictated by the file structure.
 - Select a file to start playback (Browse view will remain). Select a folder or subfolder to view their contents.
 - To return to the previous page, select the Back soft key.

Portable media

Note: If the iPhone is connected via a USB cable so that audio can be played or for phone charging, **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices audio is disconnected.

6. Upload:

Applicable to the Stored CD menu only.

Select to view and manage the CDs loaded onto the CD store.

- Select **Upload**, alongside an empty slot, to upload the current CD. There are 10 slots available.
- If the CD store is full, select **Replace** to overwrite an existing CD.

In each case a confirmation pop-up will appear. Select **Yes** to continue.

Note: Loading time is dependent on content type. A % count up is displayed. Other features can be selected while upload is in progress.

7. Skip/Scan forward:

- Touch and release to skip to the next track.
- Touch and hold to scan forwards through the current track. Play will resume when the soft key is released.

8. Repeat. In **CD** mode:

- Touch and release to repeat the current track continuously until Repeat mode is cancelled. **Repeat track** is displayed.
- Touch and release again to repeat the current Stored CD (or folder for MP3 discs) continuously until Repeat mode is cancelled. **Repeat disc** or **Repeat folder** is displayed.
- Touch and release a third time to cancel Repeat mode.

Note: Selecting **Shuffle** will cancel Repeat mode, but **Repeat track** can be selected with Shuffle mode active (cancels the previously selected Shuffle mode).

In **USB** or **iPod** mode:

- Select to repeat the current track.
- Select again to repeat the current folder (USB) or to cancel Repeat mode (iPod). Select again to cancel Repeat mode in USB.

Note: Repeat mode is not available for **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices.

Note: Selecting **Shuffle** will cancel Repeat mode.

9. Pause/Play:

Select to pause playback. Select again to resume playback.

10. Information:

More information about the current track.

11. Shuffle:

- Touch and release once to play random tracks from the current CD, MP3 folder, USB folder or iPod playlist. A **Shuffle** message is displayed.
- Touch and release again to play random tracks from CD, MP3 disc, USB folders or tracks on the media device, or tracks loaded onto the CD store. **Shuffle all** is displayed.
- Touch and release again to cancel Shuffle mode.

Note: Shuffle mode is not available for **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices.

12. Skip/Scan backward:

- Touch and release within 3 seconds of track playback to skip to the previous track.
- Touch and release after 3 seconds of track playback to skip to the beginning of the current track.

- Touch and hold to scan backwards through the current track. Playback will resume when the soft key is released.

PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS

Portable media devices can be connected to the media hub, located in the cubby box. Rear seat passengers can connect at the rear of the centre console. Compatible portable devices include:

- USB mass storage devices (e.g., a memory stick). Devices must use FAT or FAT32 file format.
- iPod (iPod Classic, iPod Touch, iPhone and iPod Nano are supported - full functionality for older devices cannot be guaranteed). iPod Shuffle functionality cannot be guaranteed.
- Auxiliary device (personal audio, MP3 players, all iPods).

Note: Auxiliary devices have no Touch screen control.

If you are connecting an iPod, mass storage or **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device, use the Touch screen to operate and search the device. Many of the controls are similar to those available for CD play.

 Please disconnect your iPod when leaving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in the iPod battery discharging.

Note: The Audio system will play MP3, WMA and AAC files.

To maximise playback quality, it is recommended that lossless compression is used for any media files on USB or iPod. Failing this, it is recommended that compressed files utilise a minimum bitrate of 192 kb/s (a higher bitrate is strongly recommended).

Note: iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer Inc., registered in the US and other countries.

Note: Some MP3 players have their own file system that is not supported by this system. To use your MP3 player, you must set it to USB Removable Device or Mass Storage Device mode. Only music that has been added to the device in this mode can be played.

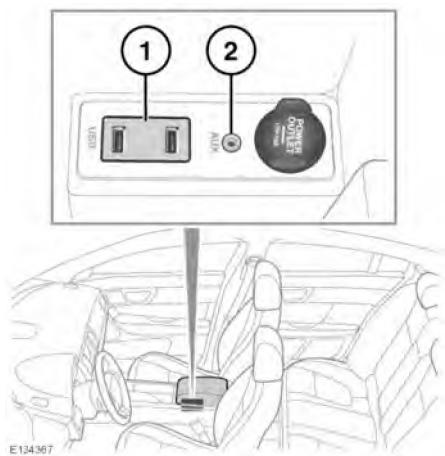
For a list of compatible **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices, please refer to the website at www.jaguar.com.

The **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices listed have been tested for compatibility. Performance will vary, based on the device's software version and battery condition. Devices are warranted by their manufacturer, not Jaguar Land Rover Limited.

CONNECTING A DEVICE

 Always refit the rubber cover when a portable device is not plugged in. This prevents damage to the socket. The cover is not waterproof.

 Read the manufacturer's instructions for any device, before it is connected to the Audio system. Make sure the device is suitable, and comply with any instructions regarding connection and operation. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle's Audio system or the auxiliary device.



Connect the device into the appropriate socket.

1. USB sockets.
2. 3.5 mm AUX socket.

! Do not plug non-audio devices into the USB port.

Note: Use the cable supplied with your media device to connect to the USB socket.

Note: A USB hub cannot be used to connect more than 1 USB device to the audio unit.

Note: Devices connected to the USB ports will be charged, but devices that are fully discharged will not play.

Note: In some cases, if an iPhone is connected via a USB cable for music and also to a **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device for other phone functions, the audio will stream through only the last connected port. For example if a **Bluetooth** wireless technology device is the last connection made to the iPhone and the iPod lead is connected, no audio will be heard through the speakers via the iPod lead. Track title and time information will still be shown on the display. Audio output from the speakers will only be obtained if the user chooses audio mode on the **Bluetooth** wireless technology device. To address this issue, disconnect and reconnect your device's USB cable, or open the iPod application on the iPhone, select the **Bluetooth** icon and select **Dock Connector** on the pop-up."

When an iPod is connected, playback will continue from the point at which it was last playing, provided the iPod battery is in a good state of charge.

Note: Options, such as **Repeat** and **Mix**, relate to the device currently playing and will not apply to any subsequent device.

The 3.5mm AUX socket allows extra equipment (e.g., personal stereos MP3 player, hand-held navigation unit, etc.) to be connected to the Audio system.

Note: iPod shuffle may be connected via the AUX socket.

PLAYING A PORTABLE DEVICE

If you are using a USB mass storage device or approved iPod, you can control playback using the Touch screen controls.

If you are using a **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device, you can control playback using the Touch screen, but some controls are unavailable.

If you are using any portable media device via the AUX socket, then you must control playback from the device itself.

 Do not connect a hard disc drive via the USB socket. These devices are not designed for in-car use and may be damaged.

CONNECTING MULTIPLE DEVICES

 Do not plug non-audio devices into the USB port.

Devices can be connected simultaneously to the USB and AUX sockets, enabling you to switch between them using the Touch screen. Select **iPod**, **USB**, **Bluetooth** or **AUX**, to switch between modes.

The device connected first will remain the active device until you choose to change.

If, after changing to a newly connected device, you change back to the first device, play will resume at the point you left it (USB and iPod only).

Note: A USB hub cannot be used to connect more than 1 USB device to the audio unit.

Note: Devices connected to the iPod/USB port will be charged, but devices that are fully discharged will not play.

Note: Options, such as **Repeat** and **Mix**, relate to the device currently playing and will not apply to any subsequent device.

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE MEDIA PLAYER

For further information on **Bluetooth®** wireless technology, see **126, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.

Note: The process of pairing and connecting your media device with the vehicle, using the media device, will vary depending on the type of media device.

1. Switch on the ignition and make sure that the Touch screen is active.
2. From the **Home** menu, select **Audio/Video**, then the **My music/Source** soft key.
3. Touch **Bluetooth**.
4. A menu will appear. Select **Change device**.
5. Select the **Device to vehicle** option.

Note: The vehicle's **Bluetooth** wireless technology system is only discoverable for 3 minutes.

6. Using the media device, search for Bluetooth wireless technology devices. On some media devices, this is referred to as new paired device. See your media device's operating instructions for further information.
7. When the vehicle's **Bluetooth** wireless technology system is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions. Select **Yes** when prompted, to confirm the pairing. Either your device or the vehicle system will ask for a PIN (Personal Identification Number). When prompted, enter a PIN of your choice and select **OK** to confirm.
8. Enter the same PIN into the other device.
9. Once your device is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message will be displayed, before switching to the **My media, Bluetooth** screen.

Note: Some media devices do not automatically connect and need to be manually connected, via the device or by using the **Change device** option.

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE TOUCH SCREEN

For further information on **Bluetooth®** wireless technology, see **126, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.

Portable media

1. Switch on your **Bluetooth** wireless technology device connection. Make sure that it is in **Bluetooth** wireless technology device discoverable mode, sometimes referred to as 'find me' mode (see your device's operating instructions for more information).
2. Switch on the ignition and make sure the Touch screen is active.
3. From the **Home menu**, select **Audio/Video**, then **My music/Source**.
4. Touch **Bluetooth**.
5. A menu will appear. Select **Change device**.
6. Select the **Vehicle to device** option.
7. Identify your device from the displayed list and select the corresponding **Pair and connect** option.
Note: If more than 5 devices are detected, it may be necessary to use the scroll bar to see the entire list.
8. When prompted, enter the PIN (Personal Identification Number) code into your device. See your device's operating instructions for more information.
9. Once your device is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message will be displayed before switching to the **My media, Bluetooth** view.

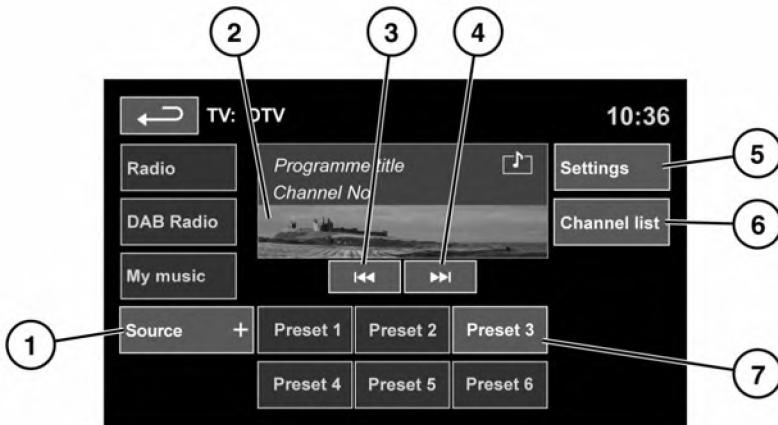
*Note: Due to the duration of a **Bluetooth** wireless technology device search, it is advised that the time-out to home screen feature is switched off before attempting to search for **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices. This setting can be changed within **Setup, Screen, Time out home**.*

CHANGING/DISCONNECTING A DEVICE

1. Switch on the ignition and make sure that the Touch screen is active.

2. From the **Home menu**, select **Audio/Video**, then the **My music/Source** soft key.
3. Touch **Bluetooth**.
4. A menu will appear. Select **Change device**.
5. Select **Disconnect**. A confirmation pop-up will appear and then you will be given the option to **Search new** or select a different device from the list of paired devices.

TELEVISION CONTROLS



E155699



In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust or view the system when it is safe to do so.



Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

See 102, AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS.

1. Touch **TV/My video** to display the **Source** soft key.
 - Touch **Source** for TV band/video input selection. Select either digital (**DTV 1** or **DTV 2 - Digital**) or analogue (**TV - Analogue**) TV reception, CD/DVD, USB or iPod.

When changing between analogue and digital bands, this will cause the last tuned channel on the new band to be displayed. When changing between digital bands, the current channel will be displayed.

Note: After 5 seconds without use, the **TV/My video** menu will close.
2. Preview screen for TV programme: Touch to select full screen mode. Briefly touch the screen again to view the controls and Electronic Programme Guide (EPG) information, at any time. To return to preview mode, touch and hold the full screen view.
3. Seek down: Select to view the previous channel on the TV channel list.
4. Seek up: Select to view the next channel on the TV channel list.
5. **Settings:** Select to switch Traffic and News announcements on or off, to select analogue TV or to select an alternative country analogue TV format, if necessary, when travelling abroad.

Note: Digital TV is not affected by a change of country.

6. **Channel list:** Select to view an alphabetical list of all TV channels currently available.
 - A small preview of the current channel and programme title is also displayed.

- Touch a listed channel to change the preview and title to the new channel.
- Touch the preview to view that channel.

Note: As the TV system is continually checking the availability of channels, it is possible for a channel to be in the list, but not actually available (e.g., when driving through different transmitter regions).

Note: After a country format change, the channel list will be empty until the system has scanned all of the channels at least once.

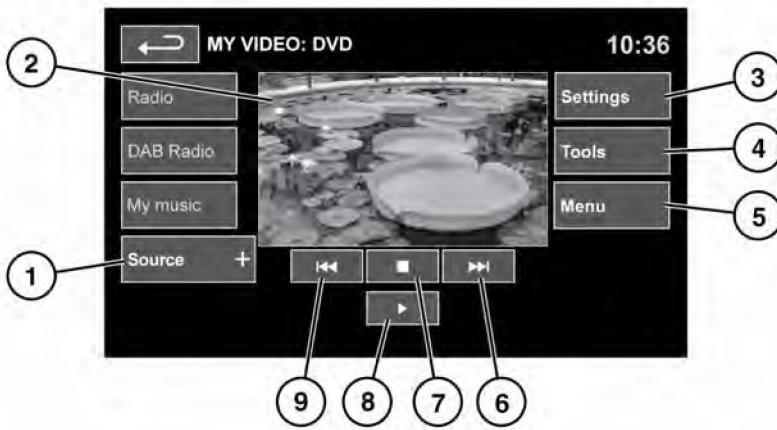
7. TV channel presets:

- Touch and hold to store the current channel as a preset. The channel name will then be displayed on the soft key.
- Briefly touch to select the channel stored on that preset.

Note: Stored presets contain information identifying the country where the preset was stored. When a preset is selected, the TV format of the country where the preset was stored will be adopted. As analogue TV formats differ in different countries, this may create a situation where the analogue channel list is empty.

For information on the use of the Audio/video controls on the audio unit and steering wheel. See **102, AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS.**

VIDEO MEDIA PLAYER CONTROLS



E155711



Do not adjust the main audio unit's controls, or allow the system to distract the driver while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.



Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

See **102, AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS**.

1. Touch **TV/My video** to display the **Source** soft key. Touch to view and select DVD or other forms of video media (CD/USB), provided the relevant media is present. The selected option will be displayed.

Note: After 5 seconds without use, the **TV/My video** menu will close.

2. Preview screen for video media information: Touch to select full screen mode. Short touch the screen again to view the controls at any time. To return to preview mode, touch and hold the full screen view.

3. Settings: Depending on the video media specification, there are 3 sub-menus within settings: **Options**, **VOD** (Video On Demand) and **Audio settings**. **VOD** allows playing of DivX VOD content from a video media. The 8 digit registration code will be displayed when the **VOD** soft key is touched. The player must also be registered with DivX. See **104, LICENSING**.

4. Tools: The following options can be selected:

- **GOTO:** The **GOTO** menu allows you to access specific parts of the video, by **Chapter** or **Title number**.
- **Subtitles.**
- **Angle.**
- **Audio.**
- **Top menu.**

5. Menu: Select to view the Video media menu. On some screens this may be replaced by a **Browse** soft key.

Video media player

6. Seek up: Select to view the next DVD chapter or to scroll through video media files.
7. Select to pre-stop playback. A second touch will stop and reset the DVD.
8. Select to start/restart play.
9. Seek down: Select to view the previous DVD chapter or to scroll through video media files.

VIDEO MEDIA INHIBIT WITH VEHICLE MOVING

When the vehicle is moving, the video picture will automatically be inhibited. The Touch screen will display the **TV/My video** screen and the relevant safety message will be displayed.

FULL SCREEN VIEW

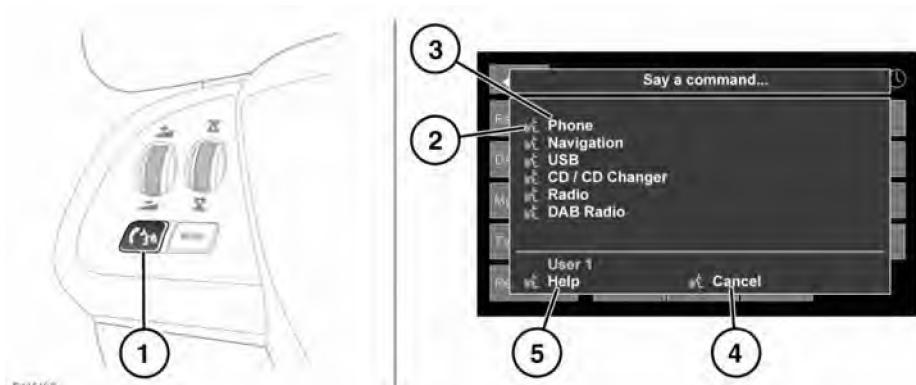
When full screen mode is selected, the seek controls operate in the same manner as they do in preview mode.

Use the relevant soft key to select the **4:3, 16:9** or **Zoom** option to magnify the picture.

USING VOICE CONTROL

Note: The Voice system has been designed to recognise a number of languages. However, Jaguar cannot guarantee the system will be compatible with every accent group within those languages. Please speak to your Dealer/Authorised Repairer about testing the Voice System for compatibility with a particular accent group.

Say What You See (SWYS) is an interactive voice control feature. Press the Voice button and the Touch screen will display the first level of commands. Say one of the commands and further options are displayed, e.g., Phone_Dial_Number, or Navigation_Show_Current position. SWYS will respond by repeating the command and then request the next voice input.



1. Voice button: Press briefly to start a Voice session. A pop up will appear on the Touch screen. Press and hold to cancel a Voice session.

Note: Briefly press the Voice button during a Voice session, to interrupt audible feedback. Wait for the tone to sound before giving the next command.

2. Voice symbol: Indicates that a command is available. Wait for the symbol to appear and a tone to sound before using the command.
3. Command list: Appears on the pop-up panel, providing feedback and available commands at each stage of the Voice session. Say an available command.

Note: As the commands are listed before the system is ready to listen, it is important to wait for the voice symbol to appear alongside the relevant command, before using the command.

4. When displayed, say **Cancel** to cancel the current Voice session.
5. When displayed, say **Help** to get assistance during a Voice session.

Note: The currently selected user (**User 1** or **User 2**) is identified at the bottom of the command list.

Note: If a listed item is longer than the available space on the menu, ...> will appear. Use the seek controls on the steering wheel to view the entire entry. See **102, AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS**.

VOICE TUTORIAL

To listen to a tutorial detailing the operation of the Voice system:

1. Briefly press the Voice button to start a Voice session.
2. Wait for the tone to sound, then say **Voice tutorial**.

Alternatively, the tutorial can be selected using the Touch screen, as follows:

1. Select **Setup** from the Touch screen **Home menu**.
2. Select **Voice** from the **Setup** menu.
3. Select **Operating guide** from the Voice settings menu.
4. Select **Voice tutorial**.

The Voice tutorial can be cancelled at any time, by touching the on-screen pop-up or by pressing and holding the Voice button.

VOICE TRAINING

This is a feature designed to enable the system to better recognise the vocal characteristics of a user, once the training has been completed.

To carry out Voice training:

1. Select **Setup** from the **Home menu**.
2. Select **Voice** from the **Setup** menu.
3. Select **Voice training** from the Voice settings menu.
4. Select **User 1** or **User 2**, to start the training.
5. Follow the on-screen and audible instructions.

The training session can be cancelled at any time, by touching the on-screen pop up, or by pressing and holding the Voice button.

VOICETAGS

Voicetags enable the user to personalise the Voice system so that a single name can be used to call up a navigation destination, telephone number or radio channel.

To add a Voicetag:

1. Briefly press the Voice button to start a Voice session.
2. Wait for the tone to sound and then say **Phone, Navigation or Radio**.
3. Say **Store voicetag**.

Alternatively, Voicetags can be managed via the Touch screen as follows:

1. Select **Setup** from the **Home menu**.
2. Select **Voice** from the **Setup** menu.
3. Select **Voicetags** from the **Voice settings** menu.
4. Select the system which the Voicetag is to activate (**Phone, Navigation or Radio/DAB**).

Follow the on-screen and audible instructions.

NAVIGATION POI VOICE COMMANDS

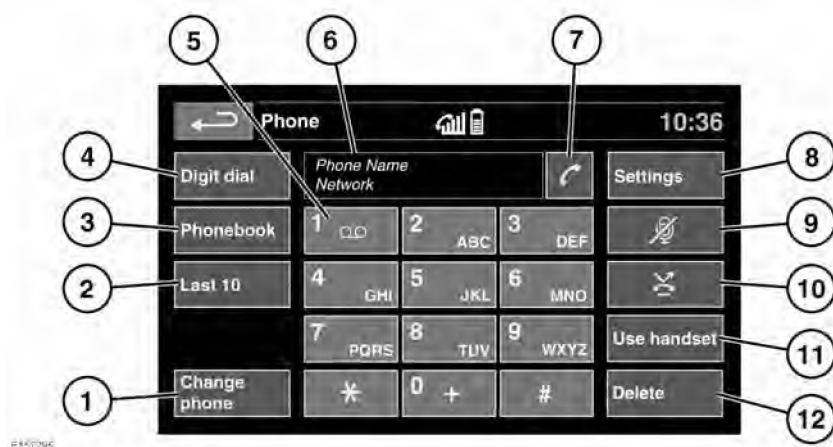
To request the display of a Point of interest (POI) identifiers on the navigation display, press the Voice button and, without hesitation, say **Navigation** followed by one of the following POI categories:

- **Petrol station or Petrol**.
- **Parking or Car park**.
- **Jaguar** (for a Jaguar Dealership).
- **Hospital**.
- **Golf course**.
- **Tourist information**.
- **Restaurant or I'm hungry**.
- **Shopping centre**.
- **Hotel**.
- **Motorway service**.

- **Town centre.**

Speak the full command line without hesitation.
Icons will appear on the navigation display,
indicating the locations of the requested POI.
For further information about POIs, see **140,**
CATEGORIES AND SUB-CATEGORIES.

TELEPHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW



1. **Change phone:** Search new or change to another paired phone.
2. **Last 10:** Access the last 10 dialled, received and missed calls.
3. **Phonebook:** Access the downloaded phonebook.
4. **Digit dial:** Access Digit dial mode.
5. Touch and hold to retrieve your Voicemail.
6. Status display: Displays the name and/or number dialled and call duration.
7. Call Connect/Disconnect icons: Touch to send/accept or end/reject a call.
8. **Settings:** Access Voicemail setup, Answer options and Phone options.
9. Mute microphone: Initiate Privacy mode. While selected, the caller will not hear you talking.
10. Auto reject: When active, any incoming calls will be rejected or diverted to voice mail (depending on mobile phone settings).
11. **Use handset:** Switch the call to your mobile phone.

12. **Delete:** Touch to delete the last entered digit, and hold to delete the whole entered number.

PHONE hard button: Press for a shortcut to the Touch screen **Phone** menu (applicable to **Bluetooth®** wireless technology phones only). See **238, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION



Bluetooth® is the name for short-range radio frequency (RF) technology that allows electronic devices to communicate wirelessly with each other.

The Jaguar Telephone system supports **Bluetooth®** Hands-Free Profile (HFP), Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP) and Audio Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP).

Note: *HFP and A2DP/AVRCP profiles can be connected independently, so a phone can be connected via one, while a media device can be connected via the other, at the same time.*

Before making use of the vehicle's phone system, your **Bluetooth** wireless technology device must be paired and connected. This is done using one of two methods; via your phone to the vehicle or from the Touch screen to your phone. If one of these methods is not successful, try the other option.

Each time the ignition is switched on, the system will attempt to connect with the last connected phone.

As mobile phones have a wide range of audio and echo characteristics, it may take a few seconds for the vehicle's system to adapt and deliver optimum audio performance. To achieve this, it may be necessary to reduce the in-vehicle volume and ventilation fan speed slightly.

TELEPHONE SAFETY



Switch off your telephone in areas with a high explosion risk. This includes filling stations, garages, fuel storage areas, or chemical factories, as well as places where the air contains fuel vapour, chemicals, or metal dust.



Always stow your mobile phone securely.



The functioning of cardiac pacemakers or hearing aids may be impaired when the phone is in use. Check with a doctor or manufacturer whether any such devices you or your passengers are using, are sufficiently protected against high-frequency energy.

The Health Industry Manufacturers' Association recommends that a minimum separation of 15 cm (6 in) is maintained between a wireless phone antenna and a pacemaker, to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. These recommendations are consistent with the independent research by, and recommendations of, Wireless Technology Research.

TELEPHONE COMPATIBILITY

Please refer to the Owner's section of the Jaguar website at www.jaguar.com, for a list of compatible phones.

Note: The **Bluetooth**® wireless technology devices listed, have been tested for compatibility with Jaguar vehicles. Performance will vary, based on the phone's software version, battery condition, coverage, and your network provider. Phones are warranted by their manufacturer, not Jaguar Land Rover Limited.

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE

Note: The process of pairing and connecting your phone with the vehicle will vary depending on the type of phone used.

1. Switch the ignition on and make sure the Touch screen is active.
2. From the **Home menu**, select **Phone**.
3. A menu will appear. Select **Search new**.
4. Select the **Device to vehicle** option.

Note: The vehicle's wireless technology system is discoverable for only 3 minutes.

5. Using the mobile phone, search for **Bluetooth**® wireless technology devices. On some phones, this is referred to as new paired device. See your phone's operating instructions for further information.

Telephone

- When the vehicle's **Bluetooth** wireless technology system is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions. Select **Yes** when prompted, to confirm the pairing. Either the phone or the vehicle system will ask for a PIN (Personal Identification Number). When prompted, enter a PIN of your choice and select **OK** to confirm.
- Enter the same PIN into the other device.
- Once your phone is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message will be displayed before switching to the Digit Dial screen.

Note: Some mobile phones require the **Bluetooth** wireless technology device pairing to be set as 'authorised' or 'trusted' in order to automatically connect. Please refer to your phone's operating instructions for further information.

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE TOUCH SCREEN

- Switch on your phone's **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device connection. Make sure that your phone is in **Bluetooth** wireless technology device discoverable mode, sometimes referred to as Find me mode (see your phone's operating instructions for more information).
- Switch the ignition on and make sure the Touch screen is active.
- From the **Home menu** select **Phone**.
- A menu will appear. Select **Search new**.
- Select the **Vehicle to device** option.
- Identify your phone from the displayed list and select the corresponding **Pair and connect** option.

Note: If more than 5 phones are detected, it may be necessary to use the scroll bar to see the entire list.

- When prompted, enter the PIN code into your phone. See your phone's operating instructions for more information.
- Once your phone is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message will be displayed before switching to the Digit Dial screen.

Note: Due to the duration of a **Bluetooth** wireless technology device search, it is advised that the timeout to home screen feature is switched off before attempting to search for devices. This setting can be changed within the **Home menu, Setup, Screen**.

CHANGING THE CONNECTED PHONE

Up to 10 phones can be paired with the vehicle in the same way. However, only 1 can be connected and ready for use as a phone at any one time.

To connect a different paired phone to the vehicle, follow the steps below:

- From the Home menu, select **Phone**.
- A menu will appear. Select **Change phone**.
- Identify and select your phone from the displayed list.
- Once your phone is connected to the system, a confirmation message will be displayed before switching to the Digit Dial screen.

TELEPHONE SYSTEM ICONS



Connect: Use to send or accept a call and access the last 10 calls list.



Disconnect: Use to end or reject a call.



No phone connected.



Phone signal strength indicator.



Phone battery level indicator.



Bluetooth. Indicates that a **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device is connected.



Tick: Indicates that a **Bluetooth** wireless technology device is paired.



Voicemail: Press and hold to dial the stored voicemail number.

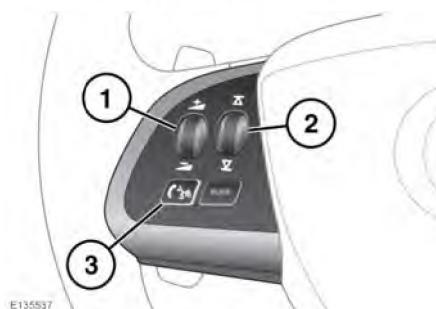


Scroll bar up arrow: Use to scroll up lists of detected phones, calls or phonebook entries.



Scroll bar down arrow: Use to scroll down lists of detected phones, calls or phonebook entries.

STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



1. Volume control: Turn to increase/decrease call volume.
2. Scroll control: Turn to scroll up/down lists of calls or phonebook entries.

3. Press to answer an incoming call. Press to end a call. Press and release to dial a number/contact. Press and release to access the Last 10 dialled list. Press and hold to access the Phonebook.

CALL VOLUME

The phone call volume is operated by the Audio system's volume control.

If the Audio system is in use when a phone call is active, the Audio system source is suppressed for the duration of the call.

PHONEBOOK

Contacts stored in the memory of a paired phone can be automatically downloaded to the vehicle's Phonebook each time the phone is connected to the system. See **127, TELEPHONE COMPATIBILITY**.

Certain phones store the Phonebook in 2 different areas; the SIM card and the phone memory. The vehicle's system will access only those numbers stored in the phone's memory.

To access contacts from the Phonebook:

1. From the **Phone** menu, select **Phonebook**.
2. Using the keyboard, select the letter you wish to search under.
3. Select **List** to view the Phonebook.
4. Identify the required contact from the displayed list and touch to call. If a contact has more than 1 number stored, select the required number from the list.

Note: It may be necessary to use the scroll bar to see the entire list.

There are also options to view more contact information, by selecting the corresponding **i** key.

Telephone

If your phone supports contact type data, you will be able to see a contact type icon in the vehicle's Phonebook directory. These can be seen on the right side of each contact in the directory and will indicate one of the following types:



Default.



Mobile.



Home.



Work.

THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

Navigation instruction is by map and turn information displayed on the Touch screen and can be complemented by Voice guidance, if required. The system uses signals from Global Positioning System (GPS) satellites combined with information from vehicle sensors and from data stored on the hard drive, to establish the true vehicle position.

Note: *Mapping data loaded on the hard drive is relevant to the market in which the vehicle is first sold and will provide guidance and information only for that area. Your Dealer/Authorised Repairer will have details of software updates.*

Using this combination of data sources, the vehicle's navigation computer enables you to plan and follow a route map to your desired destination.

The Touch screen is used to control navigation via menus, text screens and map displays.



Operate the system only when it is safe to do so.

Note: *The Navigation system fitted to your vehicle does not support speed camera alerts.*

The requirements of national Road Traffic Regulations always apply.

Observation of traffic signs and local traffic regulations always take priority.

The Navigation system serves solely as an aid to navigation. In particular, the Navigation system cannot be used as an aid to orientation when visibility is poor.

GPS signals may occasionally be interrupted due to physical barriers, such as tunnels and roads, under raised highways.

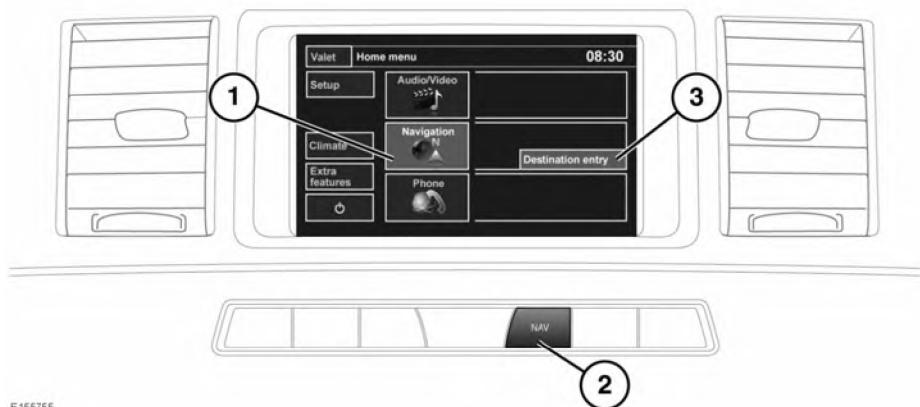
However, direction and speed sensors on the vehicle will minimise any adverse effect on the Navigation system. Normal operation will resume once the obstruction has been passed.

Under certain conditions, it is possible for the vehicle's position shown on screen to be incorrect. This may happen when:

- Driving on a spiral ramp in a building.
- Driving on or beneath elevated roads.
- Two roads are close and parallel.
- The vehicle is transported to another destination.
- The vehicle has been rotated on a turntable.
- The vehicle's battery has been disconnection.

Navigation system

USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM



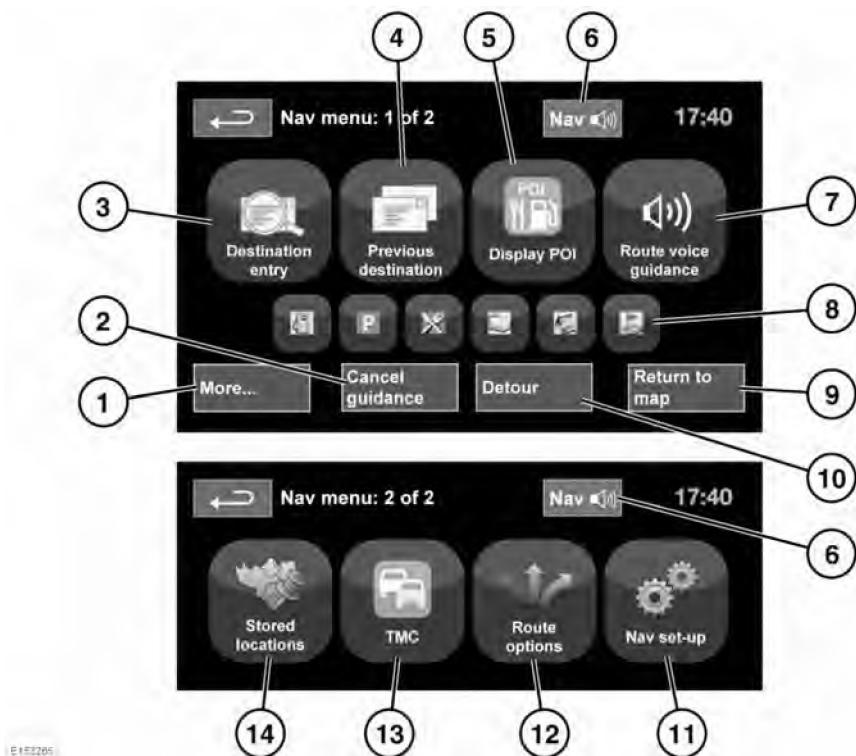
E155755

1. From the **Home menu**, touch the **Navigation** soft key.
2. Alternatively, press the **NAV** button on the facia. A **Caution** screen will be displayed.
3. For a shortcut to set a destination, touch **Destination entry**. Touch **Continue** on the **Disclaimer** screen.

After touching **Continue**, the Touch screen will display the previously displayed map view. This will show the current vehicle position. Touch the **Nav menu** soft key to display the main menu screen.

At this point, the first time user should set up personal preferences in the **Nav set-up** area. These settings are applied whenever navigation is used.

MAIN MENU

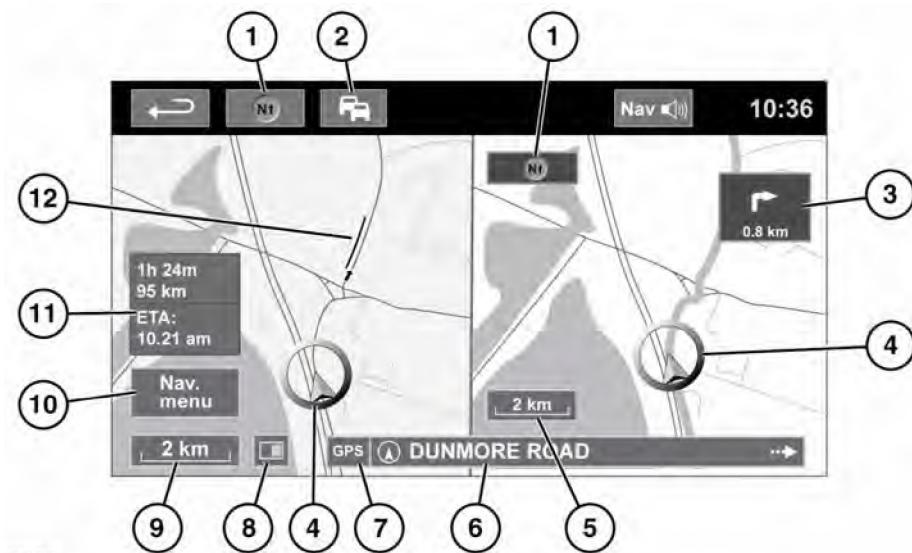


1. **More...**: Displays page 2 of 2 Nav menu screens.
2. **Cancel guidance**: Cancels the current route guidance.
3. **Destination entry**: Provides a choice of options for entering a destination.
4. **Previous destination**: Displays previous destinations entered.
5. **Display/Hide POI**: Turns the POI (Point Of Interest) icons on the map on/off.
6. When a destination is set, the Jaguar logo is replaced by a soft key which enables the last voice instruction to be repeated.
7. **Route voice guidance**: Allows the Voice guidance messages to be turned off for the current journey. The soft key is highlighted while Voice guidance is enabled.
8. **Quick POI shortcuts**: This provides the option to quickly enter a destination of a local POI. The categories can be changed in the **Nav set-up** menu.
9. **Return to map**: Advances to the main map screen.
10. **Detour**: Allows a detour from the current route.

Navigation system

11. **Nav set-up:** Settings for the Navigation system.
12. **Route options:** Allows selection of various options for the route.
13. **TMC** (Traffic Message Channel): Not used for entering a destination but, when enabled, will provide data about road conditions and any events that may affect the journey.
14. **Stored locations:** Manages the stored locations.

MAP SPLIT SCREEN



E153266

1. Compass (always indicates north): Press to select: north up, heading up or bird's eye map style.
2. TMC (Traffic Message Channel) signal: Without a diagonal bar, a signal is being received; with a diagonal bar, a signal is not being received. The icon will also change colour depending on the status of traffic on the route.
3. Next direction display: When Junction map view has been switched off, touch the icon to view again.
4. Current vehicle position and direction.
5. Screen mode.
6. Current location.
7. GPS signal indicator: The indicator is only displayed when there is no reception.
8. Screen mode.
9. Left map view, scale/zoom setting.
10. Opens the Navigation menu; 1 of 2 screens.
11. Distance/time/ETA (estimated time of arrival) to the destination.
12. TMC event (traffic congestion).

X Touch to close the Junction and Motorway junction mode. The previously displayed map is shown after closing.

MAP AUTO ZOOM

When under guidance, the map zooms in automatically when approaching a road junction or motorway junction.

1. From the map screen, touch the left map view, scale/zoom soft key.

Navigation system

2. Touch the **Auto zoom** soft key. The soft key will be highlighted when Auto zoom is enabled.

Note: The highest level to which the map will zoom out, is the scale value set before the Auto zoom feature is switched on.

SCREEN MODES

Touch the screen mode selection key to view a series of icons, each depicting a different screen mode (as detailed below). Touch the relevant icon to select the desired screen mode.



Full screen view.



Split screen view.



Shows a list of turn directions on the right half of the screen.



Guidance screen: Shows a detailed view of the next junction on the motorway or junction view on non-motorway roads, in the right half of the screen.



Motorway information: This view is available only when travelling on a motorway. It displays automatically to show the remaining motorway exits along your route, or all exits on the current motorway when the route is not set.

To turn off the Guidance or Motorway information screens, proceed as follows:

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **More....**
2. Select **Nav set-up**.
3. Touch **User settings**.
4. Touch **Guidance screen** or **Motorway information** to deselect the option.

5. Touch **Ok** to confirm.

SEARCH AREA

The navigation map database is divided into countries, or areas of countries, called search areas. When setting a route, the destination (or waypoint) entered must be in the currently selected search area.

Before attempting to set a destination or waypoint, set the correct search area as follows:

1. Select **Destination entry** from the main Navigation menu.
2. Touch **More....**
3. Touch **Search area**.
4. Scroll through the list and select the 3 letter code that corresponds to the desired destination area.
5. Select **Ok**. The destination entry menu is shown and the information window shows the currently selected search area.

SETTING A DESTINATION

1. After touching **Agree**, the initial map screen is displayed, now touch **Nav menu**.
2. From the Navigation menu, touch **Destination entry**.

Note: The **Destination entry** button is also available on the **Home menu** as well as in the **main map view**.
3. Touch **Address** from the **Destination** screen and input the town name or postcode.
4. Once sufficient letters have been entered, touch **Ok** or **List** to display all of the possible towns.
5. If necessary, use the scroll arrows to the left of the list to search up or down. Select the town you require.

6. Now enter the road name. Once sufficient letters have been entered, touch **Ok** or **List** to display all of the possible roads.
7. Select the road you require. Enter the house number of the address (if known) and then touch **Ok** to confirm.
8. If the house number is not known, select **Ok**, the end of the road is then used as the destination.
9. The map screen showing the selected destination details is displayed. Touch **GO** to calculate the default quick route, or **Review route** for alternative routes.
10. Touch **GO** to start the journey.

START GUIDANCE

After selecting **Review route**, the system will calculate the route.

There is now a choice to select **3 Routes**, **Change route** or select **GO**, to start the Navigation guidance.

1. Touch **3 Routes** to display a choice of 3 different route options on the map. The roads on the map are drawn in 3 different colours to highlight each route. EcoRoute helps you find the most fuel efficient route available. A display of 3 leaves indicates the most fuel efficient route.
2. Select route **Quick**, **Short** or **Alt route** by touching the respective box displayed on the right side of the map.
3. Touch **Change route** followed by **Route preferences** to change the route settings.
4. When you have made your selection, if any, touch **GO**.

Note: As you approach a junction, in addition to the Voice guidance, an inset on the map will display an enlarged view of the junction.

AVOID POINTS

When calculating a route, an area to avoid can be set and stored.

1. From the navigation **Main menu**, touch **More....**
2. Select **Stored locations**.
3. Select **Avoid points**.
4. Select **Add**.
5. Select the location of the area to avoid from the **Destination entry** menu. Touch **Ok** to activate the view where the size of the area to avoid can be set. The size of the area can be adjusted by using the '+' and '-' symbols.
6. Touch **Ok** to activate the area to avoid.
7. Touch **Ok**. The area to avoid is now set and stored.

To edit or delete an area to avoid from the stored list.

1. From the navigation **Main menu**, touch **More....**
2. Select **Stored locations**.
3. Select **Avoid points**.
4. From the sub-menu, select **Edit** or **Delete**.

EASY ROUTE

In **Route options**, **Easy route** can be turned **On** or **Off**.

When **On** is selected, **Easy route** changes the calculation parameters of **Route 3** in order to reduce:

- Junctions.
- Turns.
- Turns that cross traffic.
- The priority of minor roads.
- Complex junctions and manoeuvres.

Navigation system

LEARN ROUTE

In **Route options**, **Learn route** can be turned **On** or **Off**.

When **On** is selected, if you make the same deviation from the proposed route 3 times, then the system will memorise the deviation and offer that as the normal route from then on. Select **Reset all routes** to delete any learnt routes and return to the default settings.

VOICE GUIDANCE

To turn Voice guidance on or off but maintain Route guidance, proceed as follows:

1. Touch **Nav menu** on the navigation screen.
2. Touch the **Route voice guidance** soft key. The soft key will be highlighted when voice guidance is enabled.

CANCEL ROUTE GUIDANCE

To cancel Route guidance, proceed as follows:

1. Touch **Nav menu** on the navigation screen.
2. Touch the **Cancel guidance** soft key.

QUICK POI SELECTION

1. Touch the screen map to display the additional options.
2. Touch the **Point of interest** (POI) soft key.
3. The screen shows 6 suggested categories, 5 of which can be selected as Quick POI's.
4. Select a Quick POI category, or touch **More** ... to see further POIs. Touch **Ok** to confirm a selection.
5. The map with the POI icon(s) is displayed. Scroll the map to the POI icon, then touch **Set destination** to set and calculate the route.
6. Touch **GO** to start the journey.

RESTORE SYSTEM DEFAULTS

From the navigation **Main menu**, select **Nav set-up**. If you have made any changes to the system's default settings, use this menu to restore the original settings.

FAVOURITES

This enables you to manage destinations such as, place of work, home, favourite restaurant, etc.

From the favourites sub-menu in stored locations, you can save up to 400 stored favourites.

1. From the navigation **Main menu**, touch **More....**
2. Select **Stored locations**.
3. Touch **Favourite**.
4. To store a favourite, select **Add** from the sub-menu.
5. Select any destination entry method and confirm the desired location.

FAVOURITES DETAILS

1. From the **Stored locations** menu, select **Favourite**.
2. Select **Edit** or **Delete**.
3. Touch the selected favourite to display the details.
4. Select the chosen detail to edit. Details include **Attribute**, **Name**, **Phone number**, **Location** and **Icon**.

HOME

1. From the navigation **Main menu**, touch **More....**
2. Select **Stored locations**.
3. Touch **Home location**.

4. To store a home location, select **Add** from the sub-menu.
5. Select any destination entry method to set your home location. Touch **Ok** to confirm.
6. Touch **Ok** from the favourite summary, home location is now set.

POSTCODE

Note: This facility is not available in all countries.

1. From the **Nav menu**, select **Destination entry**.
2. Touch **Postcode**. Enter the postcode of your waypoint or destination from the keypad. The postcode must be entered precisely, including any spaces or punctuation.
3. When the postcode has been entered, touch **Ok**.

EMERGENCY

Note: This facility is not available in all countries.

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **Destination entry**.
2. Touch **Emergency**, to display a list of local police stations, hospitals or Jaguar Dealerships.
3. Touch **Name** to display the list in alphabetical order or **Distance** to display the list in order of proximity to the current vehicle location.
4. Touch the name of the facility to set it as a destination or waypoint.

MAP

Scroll the map to the area of your destination or waypoint, zooming in if required.

This location can be stored as a favourite, destination or waypoint.

COORDINATES

If you know the coordinates of your destination, they can be entered from this screen.

- From the navigation menu, select **Destination entry**.
- Select **More....**
- Select **Coordinates**. The full latitude must be entered first before the longitude coordinates can be entered.
- Touch **OK**, when the coordinates have been entered.

If the coordinates entered are not contained within the area covered by the available maps, a message will be shown. This can also occur if the incorrect coordinates have been entered.

RECALLING A PREVIOUS DESTINATION

1. From the navigation **Main menu**, touch **Previous destination**.
2. Touch your previous destination from the list. The map showing the selected destination is displayed.
3. Touch **GO** to start the journey.

MOTORWAY ENTRY/EXIT

1. From the navigation **Main menu**, touch **Destination entry**.
2. Touch **More....**
3. Touch **Motorway Entry/Exit**.
4. Enter the motorway name or number, or select from **List**.
5. Touch **Entrance** or **Exit**.
6. Enter the entrance or exit name for the chosen motorway, or select from **List**. The map showing the selected motorway and junction is displayed.
7. Touch **GO** to start the journey.

Navigation system

POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

1. From the navigation **Main menu**, touch **Destination entry**.
2. Touch **More....**
3. Touch **Point of interest**.
4. Touch the POI name and touch **Ok** to confirm.
5. Enter the POI name, or select from the **List**.
6. Alternatively, choose **Category** to see all categories of POI and make your selection. See 140, **CATEGORIES AND SUB-CATEGORIES**.
7. To narrow the search area, touch **Town** to enter a town name.
8. Once the POI has been selected, the map showing the selected destination is displayed.
9. Touch **GO** to start the journey.

Note: If entering a POI name results in too many matches being listed, try entering the town name first. If you do not know the name of the POI you want, try selecting a POI category.

Note: POI icons can only be displayed up to the 1 km (½ mile) zoom level.

DEALER LOCATIONS

Details of Jaguar Dealers are held on the Navigation system as a Point of interest (POI) category, under the car/automotive category. See 140, **LOCAL POI SEARCH**.

CATEGORIES AND SUB-CATEGORIES

The POI database is divided into a number of categories. Each main category is further divided into a number of sub-categories.

Touch the desired category, then choose desired sub-categories.

MY POI

Additional POIs can be downloaded and added to the list. The system can store up to 50,000 'My POIs', in up to 100 groups (whichever comes first).

Free POIs can be found on the internet and downloaded into the system. The name of the imported file will be displayed as a group name. Imported icons will be displayed on the map. In order for a file or icon to be successfully downloaded, the following conditions must exist:

- The POI file must be in a GPS Exchange format (.gpx), version 1.1.
- The POI file name must not contain the following characters: -, /, ;, *, ", <, >, or |.
- The POI file name must not exceed 35 characters.
- The icon file name must match the POI file name.
- The icon size must not exceed 32x32 dots.
- The icon format must be a bitmap (.bmp) or jpeg (.jpg).

To download files or icons, connect a USB device containing the POIs. See 115, **CONNECTING A DEVICE**.

1. From the navigation **Main menu**, touch **More....**
2. Select **Stored locations**.
3. Touch **My POI**.
4. Select **Add** to individually select each POI group to be downloaded. Select **Edit** to change **Name**, **Icon**, or **Sound icon**, or select **Delete**.

LOCAL POI SEARCH

Use to select Points of interest (POI) close to the vehicle's position.

1. From the navigation **Main menu**, touch **Destination entry**.
2. Touch **More....**
3. Touch **Point of interest**.
4. Touch **POI near current** and touch **Ok** to confirm.
5. Select the relevant POI category, if required select again from a sub-category and touch **Ok** to confirm.
6. Touch **Show list** or **Select category** to make further selections.

Note: Up to 5 categories can be chosen to select a POI from.

7. Select your POI destination from the list. The map showing the selected destination is displayed.
8. Touch **Destination** to set and calculate the route.
9. Touch **GO** to start the journey.

Note: Nav **POI near current position** can be set as a **Home menu** shortcut. See **64, TOUCH SCREEN SETUP**.

ARABIC NAVIGATION

To turn Arabic navigation on or off.

1. From the **Home menu**, touch **Setup**.
2. Touch **System**.
3. Touch **Language** and select **Arabic** navigation **On**.
4. Select **Yes** to continue with **Arabic** navigation.

Note: The **Voice recognition system** is not compatible with **Arabic** navigation.

RDS-TMC OVERVIEW

RDS-TMC (Radio Data System-Traffic Message Channel) is a feature that announces traffic hold-ups on your route, as broadcast by radio stations that transmit TMC information.

Touch the **TMC** button on the navigation **Main menu** to access the TMC menu.

TMC events ahead on route can be displayed by touching the **Events ahead** soft key. TMC can be set to display on the map for all events, for major events or can be switched off. During route calculation, avoiding events is set to **On** by default.

RDS-TMC DISPLAY

When a TMC signal is received, the icon in the top left of the screen will appear green. If a TMC signal is not being received, the icon will be shown with a bar through it.

The system will inform the driver of any roadworks, narrow road, contraflow, accidents, slippery road, diversion, information, parking information, congestion or other hazard.

The driver is informed of a traffic event as follows:

- A TMC Event icon shown on the map at the location of the event.
- Text can be displayed showing the details of each occurrence, which can be selected either by touching the screen icon or from the traffic information list.
- Dynamic route guidance, which calculates an alternative route when the system receives the traffic event warning affecting the route currently set in the Navigation system.
- The traffic event list shows all events sorted by road name/distance on your selected route, either in a straight line or along your actual route.

Navigation system

The information regarding the hold-up is maintained and updated, even if the vehicle crosses into another country.

RDS-TMC ICONS

Any traffic event (broadcast on TMC) in your area, will be displayed as an arrow on the map.

In case of lost reception, this data is stored in the system for up to 15 minutes.

The colour of the TMC icon changes to indicate the type and priority of a TMC event. The background colour of the icon returns to normal when there is no longer an event or hold-up, or if any re-route instructions are calculated.

The TMC Event icons appear on the navigation map display to indicate the location and nature of a TMC event.

TMC Event icons will appear on the map, even if the event does not occur on your route.



Incident (Red).



Moving Tailback Ahead (Red).



Moving Tailback Both Carriageways (Red).



Slow Traffic Ahead (Yellow).



Slow Traffic Both Carriageways (Yellow).



Information (Yellow).



Incident (Yellow).

Note: Single arrow icons indicate that the traffic event affects traffic travelling in the direction of the arrow. Double arrows indicate that both directions are affected.

If the map is scrolled to any of the above events, further details are available and are indicated as one of the following icons.



Closed Road.



Special Warning (orange).



Danger (red).



Stationary Traffic.



Congestion.



Delay.



Diversion.



Contraflow.



Event.



Height Width Limit.

USING TMC

Dynamic route guidance will calculate an alternative route, to avoid a traffic event, when the system receives an event warning. The system calculates a new route for all sections. However, if any waypoints are set, the system calculates for the next waypoint. If the event on route is serious (closed road), or if the new route is shorter than the current one and the current one was not recalculated within the last 5 minutes, then a message to confirm the new route will be displayed. This pop-up message will be displayed for 5 minutes and if the new route is not selected, then the vehicle will stay on current route.

ORDNANCE SURVEY DATA

Please read this agreement carefully before using the Navigation System.

This is a licence agreement to use the Ordnance Survey (OS) Code-Point data incorporated in the Navigation System. By using this Code-Point data you accept and agree to all the terms and conditions below.

OWNERSHIP

The OS Code-Point data is licensed by Ordnance Survey with permission of Her Majesty's Stationery Office. © Crown Copyright. All rights reserved.

LICENCE GRANT

OS grants you a non-exclusive licence to use your copy of the OS Code-Point data for your personal use solely as part of the Navigation System. You may transfer the licence to a subsequent purchaser of the vehicle with which the Navigation System is supplied, provided that the purchaser agrees to abide by each of the terms of this licence.

LICENCE TERMS

These licence terms are governed by English Law and are subject to the exclusive jurisdiction of the English courts.

LIMITATIONS OF USE

The OS Code-Point data is restricted for use in the specific system for which it was created. Except to the extent explicitly permitted by mandatory applicable laws, you may not extract or re-utilise any part of the contents of the OS Code-Point data, not reproduce, copy, modify, adapt, translate, disassemble, decompile, or reverse engineer any portion of the OS Code-Point data.

LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

Ordnance Survey does not warrant or represent that any of the Code-Point data is accurate, error-free or suitable for your purposes. In no event shall OS or the supplier of the Navigation System using the OS Code-Point data be liable for any consequential, special, incidental or indirect damages for any direct or indirect loss of revenue, profits, business, data, or use, incurred by you or any third party arising out of your use of the OS Code-Point data, whether in an action in contract or tort (including negligence and breach of statutory duty) or otherwise, even if OS or the supplier of the Navigation System has been advised of the possibility of such damages. In any event, OS's liability for direct damages is limited to the price of the copy of the OS Code-Point data. Nothing in these licence terms shall operate to exclude or limit any liability which cannot be excluded or limited by law.

Navigation system

THE DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY, SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT, DO NOT AFFECT OR PREJUDICE YOUR STATUTORY RIGHTS WHERE YOU HAVE ACQUIRED THE DATABASE OTHERWISE THAN IN THE COURSE OF A BUSINESS.



The DATABASE reflects reality as existing before you received the DATABASE and it comprises data and information from government and other sources, which may contain errors and omissions. Accordingly, the DATABASE may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, and due to the nature of the sources used. The DATABASE does not include or reflect information on - inter alia - neighbourhood safety; law enforcement; emergency assistance; construction work; road or lane closures; vehicle or speed restrictions; road slope or grade; bridge height, weight or other limits; road or traffic conditions; special events; traffic congestion; or travel time.

NAVTEQ CORPORATION

Please read this agreement carefully before using the Navigation System.

This is a licence agreement for your copy of the Navigable Map Database, (the 'DATABASE') originally made by NAVTEQ Corporation, used in the Navigation System. By using this DATABASE you accept and agree to all the terms and conditions below.

OWNERSHIP

The DATABASE and the copyrights and intellectual property or neighbouring rights therein are owned by NAVTEQ Corporation or its licensors.

LICENCE GRANT

NAVTEQ Corporation grants you a non-exclusive licence to use your copy of the DATABASE for your personal use or for use in your business' internal operations. This license does not include the right to grant sub-licenses.

LIMITATIONS OF USE

The DATABASE is restricted for use in the specific system for which it was created. Except to the extent explicitly permitted by mandatory applicable laws, you may not extract or re-utilise substantial parts of the contents of the DATABASE, not reproduce, copy, modify, adapt, translate, disassemble, decompile, or reverse engineer any portion of the DATABASE.

TRANSFER

You may not transfer the DATABASE to third parties, except together with system for which it was created, provided that you do not retain any copy of the DATABASE, and provided that the transferee agrees to all terms and conditions of this agreement.

DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY

NAVTEQ Corporation does not warrant or make any representations regarding, either express or implied, regarding the use or results of the use of the DATABASE in terms of its correctness, accuracy, reliability, or otherwise and expressly disclaims any implied warranties of quality, performance, merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose or non-infringement.

NAVTEQ Corporation does not warrant that the DATABASE is or will be error-free. No oral or written information or advice provided by NAVTEQ Corporation, your supplier or any other person shall create a warranty.

LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

NAVTEQ Corporation does not warrant or make any representations regarding, either express or implied, regarding the use or results of the use of the DATABASE in terms of its correctness, accuracy, reliability, or otherwise and expressly disclaims any implied warranties of quality, performance, merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose or non-infringement.

NAVTEQ Corporation does not warrant that the DATABASE is or will be error-free. No oral or written information or advice provided by NAVTEQ Corporation, your supplier or any other person shall create a warranty.

GOVERNMENT END USERS

If the DATABASE is for a region of North America and is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, the DATABASE is licensed with 'limited rights'.

Utilization of the DATABASE is subject to the restrictions specified in the 'Rights in Technical Data and Computer Database' clause at DFARS 252.227-7013, or the equivalent clause for non-defence agencies. Manufacturer of the DATABASE of North America is NAVTEQ Corporation, 10400 W. Higgins Road, Suite 400, Rosemont, Illinois 60018, USA.

EUROPEAN DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY



Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this DN-NS-019 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- ⚠ Do not smoke, use a naked flame, or cause sparks while refuelling. The resulting fire and explosion may cause serious injury or death.**
- ⚠ Avoid exposing the fuel gases to any potential sources of ignition, as the resulting fire and explosion may cause serious injuries and/or death.**
- ⚠ Switch off the engine when refuelling.**
- ⚠ Switch off any personal electronic devices, such as mobile phones or music players, when refuelling.**

PETROL ENGINED VEHICLES

- ⚠ Use high quality fuel that meets the specification defined by EN228 (or the national equivalent).**
- ⚠ Do not use leaded fuels, fuels with lead substitutes (e.g. manganese-based), or fuel additives, as these may adversely affect the emissions control systems, and may affect warranty coverage.**

OCTANE RATING

V6 and V8 petrol vehicles

Jaguar Land Rover Limited recommends the use of premium unleaded fuel, with a minimum octane rating of 95 RON to contribute to optimum performance, fuel economy and driveability.

I4 petrol engines

Your vehicle requires the use of premium unleaded fuel with a minimum octane rating of 95 RON to contribute to optimum performance, fuel economy and driveability.

If premium unleaded fuel is not available, you may use unleaded fuel with a lower octane rating, down to a minimum of 91 RON, but this may reduce engine performance, increase fuel consumption, cause audible engine 'knock' and other driveability problems.

⚠ Do not use fuels with an octane rating lower than 91 RON as severe engine damage may occur.

If a heavy persistent engine knock is detected, even when using fuel to the recommended octane rating, or if you hear engine knock while holding a steady speed on level roads, consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer to have the problem corrected. Failure to do so is misuse of the vehicle, for which Jaguar Land Rover Limited is not responsible.

ETHANOL

Fuels containing up to 10% ethanol (E5 and E10) may be used.

Make sure that the fuel has octane ratings no lower than those recommended for unleaded fuel. Most drivers will not notice any operating difference with fuel containing ethanol. If a difference is detected, the use of conventional unleaded fuel should be resumed.

⚠ This vehicle is not suitable for use with fuels containing more than 10% ethanol.

⚠ Do not use E85 fuels (85% ethanol content), as serious engine and fuel system damage will occur.

METHANOL

⚠ Wherever possible, avoid using fuel containing methanol.

Use of fuels containing methanol may cause serious engine and fuel system damage, which may not be covered under warranty.

METHYL TERTIARY BUTYL ETHER (MTBE)

Unleaded fuel containing an oxygenate known as MTBE can be used, provided that the ratio of MTBE to conventional fuel does not exceed 15%. MTBE is an ether based compound derived from petroleum, which has been specified by several refiners as the substance to enhance the octane rating of fuel.

DIESEL ENGINED VEHICLES

Use only high quality diesel fuel in accordance with European Standard EN590 or equivalent.

! Jaguar Land Rover vehicles are capable of running with up to a 7% blend of bio-diesel, in accordance with European Standard EN590. Jaguar Land Rover Limited does not recommend use of a higher blend of Bio Diesel.

The quality and specification of diesel fuel varies significantly, depending on geographical location. Jaguar Land Rover strongly recommends the use of premium, or highest quality available, fuel.

High quality fuel promotes a longer life for your engine components. Lower grade fuel contains higher levels of sulphur, which is detrimental to engine components. If low quality fuel is used, light coloured smoke may be evident at the exhaust.

Prolonged use of additives is not recommended. Do not add paraffin or petrol to diesel fuels.

! If you inadvertently fill your vehicle with petrol instead of diesel, do not attempt to start the engine. Contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer immediately.

! Jaguar Land Rover Limited can accept no responsibility for any damage caused by running your vehicle with fuel other than those stipulated.

SULPHUR CONTENT

! If your vehicle is fitted with a Diesel particulate filter (DPF) After treatment system, the maximum sulphur content of the fuel must not exceed 0.005% (50 parts per million), in accordance with EN590-EU4, or World Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC) Cat 3.

! The sulphur content of diesel fuel used in Jaguar Land Rover vehicles not fitted with a DPF, should not exceed 0.3% (3 000 parts per million).

In some countries, diesel fuel will contain higher levels of sulphur, which will require reduced service intervals to reduce the effects on engine and After treatment components. If in doubt, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice. See **154, DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF)**.

! Using an incorrect specification of fuel will cause serious damage to the engine and/or After treatment system, which may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. If in doubt, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

! Avoid running out of fuel!

If the vehicle does run out of fuel, a minimum of 4 litres (0.9 gallons) will be required to restart the engine. The vehicle should be left with the ignition on for 5 minutes after refuelling before attempting to restart the engine.

Note: If the vehicle does run out of fuel, seeking qualified assistance is advisable.

Fuel and refuelling

WATER IN FUEL

! If the warning **WATER IN FUEL** is displayed in the Message centre, an excessive amount of water has collected in the fuel filter bowl. Seek assistance from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer to have the filter drained as soon as possible.

DIESEL ENGINES

Vehicles with diesel engines are equipped with a system to prevent the fuel tank from emptying completely. When the fuel reaches a minimum level, the system will activate a reduced power mode (i.e., the engine will not run properly). This will be followed by the engine stopping in approximately 1.6 km (1 mile).

This feature prevents the fuel system from running dry, which could cause damage to the vehicle. If the gauge indicates low fuel or the warning indicator illuminates, the fuel tank should be refuelled as soon as possible, with at least 4 litres (0.9 gallons) of fuel.

If the system protection function has activated, the vehicle must be refuelled, then restarted using the following procedure:

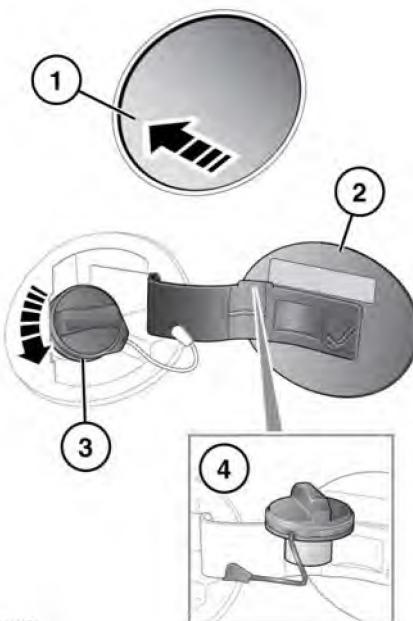
1. With the brake pedal pressed, press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button and crank the engine for 5 seconds.
2. Release the **START/STOP** button.
3. With the brake pedal pressed, press and release the **START/STOP** button to crank the engine. The engine should start within approximately 5 seconds.

Note: If the engine does not start, pause for 10 seconds with the ignition in Convenience mode, before repeating the procedure from the beginning.

! Do not crank the engine for longer than 30 seconds continuously.

FUEL FILLER FLAP

! Take note of all the warnings and instructions given on the label affixed to the inside of the filler flap.



The vehicle must be unlocked using the Smart key, before the filler flap can be opened.

1. Press and release the rear of the flap (in the area indicated) to unlatch.
2. Pull the flap open. The label on the inside of the flap indicates the correct fuel for the vehicle.
3. Twist the cap counter-clockwise to undo.
4. Stow the cap on the lip provided on the top of the hinge arm, as shown.

When replacing the cap, turn it clockwise until the ratchet clicks. Failure to do so may cause the Engine malfunction warning lamp to illuminate. If the warning lamp illuminates, make sure the cap is fitted properly.

To close the filler flap, push the flap until latched closed.

Note: *The filler flap will only be locked closed when the vehicle is centrally locked.*

FUEL FILLER

-  When refuelling, make sure that all of the windows, doors and the sunroof are fully closed, particularly if young children or animals are in the vehicle.
-  Do not attempt to fill the tank to its maximum capacity. If the vehicle is to be parked on a slope, in direct sunlight, or high ambient temperature, expansion of the fuel could cause spillage.
-  Check the fuel pump information carefully, to make sure that you are putting the correct fuel into the vehicle.
-  Make sure that the fuel filler nozzle is fully inserted into the filler neck.
-  If the vehicle is filled with incorrect fuel, it is essential that you seek qualified assistance before you start the engine.

Fuel station pumps are equipped with automatic cut-off sensing, to avoid fuel spillage. Fill the tank slowly until the filler nozzle automatically cuts off the supply. Do not attempt to fill the tank beyond this point.

Note: *Filling station pumps used for diesel commercial vehicles deliver fuel at a higher rate than normal. The higher fill rate can cause premature cut-off and may cause fuel spillage. Therefore, it is recommended that only standard light vehicle pumps are used.*

DIESEL MISFUELLED PROTECTION DEVICE

If the narrow filler nozzle fitted to pumps delivering unleaded petrol is fully inserted into the filler neck, the Diesel misfuelling protection device will activate.

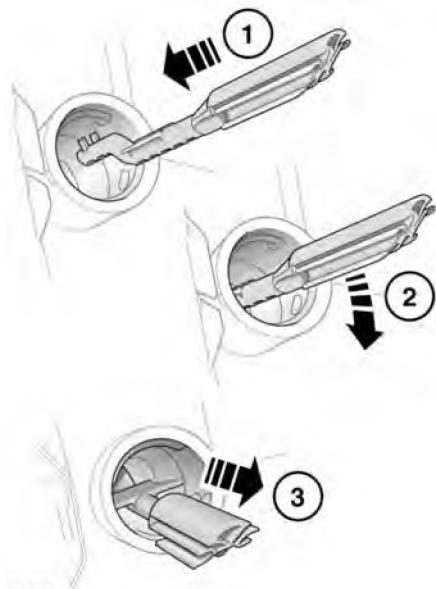
Note: *The Diesel misfuelling protection device may not activate if the petrol nozzle is only partially inserted.*

 When the misfuelling protection device is activated, it may cause fuel to be discharged from the filler neck.

Note: *It is the driver's responsibility to fill the vehicle with the correct fuel. The misfuelling protection device only reduces the risk of filling the vehicle with incorrect fuel.*

Note: *The filler spout on some fuel cans and older fuel pumps may trigger the misfuelling protection device.*

When activated, the yellow misfuelling protection device will be visible inside the filler neck. It will prevent fuel flow into the tank. Before fuelling can continue with the correct fuel, the misfuelling protection device must be reset.



The reset tool is stored in the Luggage compartment, clipped onto the battery retaining bar.

To reset the misfuelling protection device:

1. Insert the reset tool with the teeth uppermost, as far as it will go into the filler neck.
2. Locate the teeth by pushing down the top of the reset tool.
3. With the top of the tool pressed down and the teeth engaged, slowly pull the tool out of the filler neck to reset the device.

! Do not twist the device, once the teeth have engaged.

Note: When reset, the yellow part of the misfuelling protection device should no longer be visible in the filler neck.

Replace the reset tool in position on the battery retaining bar.

FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Avoid the risk of running out of fuel. When the fuel gauge indicates empty, there is a small fuel reserve remaining in the tank. Use this reserve to drive directly to the nearest fuel station and refuel the vehicle. You may not be able to add the full fuel quantity shown in the Capacities table as there may be a small reserve remaining in the tank. See 213, **CAPACITIES**.

FUEL CONSUMPTION

Variant	Urban L/100 km (mpg)	Extra-urban L/100 km (mpg)	Combined L/100 km (mpg)	CO2 emissions g/km
Saloon				
2.2L diesel (17 in. wheels)	6.1 (46.3)	4.5 (62.8)	5.1 (55.4)	135
2.2L ECO2 diesel (17 in. wheels)	5.8 (48.7)	4.4 (64.2)	4.9 (57.7)	129
2.2L diesel (18, 19 or 20 in. wheels)	6.2 (45.6)	4.7 (60.1)	5.2 (54.3)	139
2.2L ECO2 diesel (20 in. wheels)	6.1 (46.3)	4.5 (62.8)	5.1 (55.4)	135
3.0L diesel	7.5 (37.7)	5.0 (56.5)	6.0 (47.1)	159
2.0L petrol	13.4 (21.1)	6.2 (45.6)	8.9 (31.7)	207
2.0L petrol with Stop/start	11.6 (24.4)	6.1 (46.3)	8.1 (34.9)	189
3.0L petrol SC	14.7 (19.2)	6.8 (41.5)	9.7 (29.1)	232
3.0L petrol SC with Stop/start	13.2 (21.4)	7.0 (40.4)	9.3 (30.4)	221
3.0L petrol SC AWD	15.3 (18.5)	7.1 (39.8)	10.1 (28)	241
3.0L petrol SC AWD with Stop/start	13.7 (20.6)	7.3 (38.7)	9.6 (29.4)	229
5.0L petrol SC	19.1 (14.8)	9.0 (31.4)	12.7 (22.2)	297
5.0L petrol SC with Stop/start	19.1 (14.8)	9.0 (31.4)	12.7 (22.2)	297
XFR-S				
5.0L petrol SC	19.1 (14.8)	9.0 (31.4)	12.7 (22.2)	297

SC - Supercharged, **AWD** - All Wheel Drive.

Fuel and refuelling

Variant	Urban L/100 km (mpg)	Extra-urban L/100 km (mpg)	Combined L/100 km (mpg)	CO2 emissions g/km
Sportbrake				
2.2L diesel (17 in. wheels)	6.1 (46.3)	4.5 (62.8)	5.1 (55.4)	135
2.2L ECO2 diesel (17 in. wheels)	5.8 (48.7)	4.4 (64.2)	4.9 (57.7)	129
2.2L diesel (18, 19 or 20 in. wheels)	6.2 (45.6)	4.7 (60.1)	5.2 (54.3)	139
2.2L ECO diesel (20 in. wheels)	6.1 (46.3)	4.5 (62.8)	5.1 (55.4)	135
3.0L diesel	7.5 (37.7)	5.2 (54.3)	6.1 (46.3)	163
XFR-S Sportbrake				
5.0L petrol SC	19.1 (14.8)	9.0 (31.4)	12.7 (22.2)	297

URBAN CYCLE

The urban test cycle is carried out from a cold start and consists of a series of accelerations, decelerations and periods of steady speed driving and engine idling. The maximum speed attained during the test is 50 km/h (30 mph) with an average speed of 19 km/h (12 mph).

EXTRA-URBAN CYCLE

The extra-urban test cycle is carried out immediately after the urban test. Approximately half of the test comprises steady-speed driving, while the remainder consists of a series of accelerations, decelerations and engine idling. The maximum test speed is 120 km/h (75 mph) and the average speed 63 km/h (39 mph). The test is carried out over a distance of 7 km (4.3 miles).

COMBINED

The combined figure is an average of the urban and extra-urban test cycle results, which has been weighted to take account of the different distances covered during the two tests.



For additional information on fuel consumption figures and exhaust emissions, visit the Vehicle Certification Agency (VCA) website at:

<http://www.vcacarfueldata.org.uk/>

RUNNING-IN

This vehicle is built using high-precision manufacturing methods, but the moving parts of the engine must still bed-in relative to one another. The process occurs mainly in the first 3 000 km (2 000 miles) of operation.

During this Running-in period of 3 000 km (2 000 miles) you should:

- Avoid frequent cold starts followed by short-distance driving.
- Preferably take longer trips.
- Do not use full throttle during starts and normal driving.
- Avoid continuous operation at high engine speed and abrupt stops.
- Do not participate in track days, sports driving schools, or similar.

In addition, specifically up to 2 000 km (1 200 miles):

- Drive at varying engine and road speeds, but do not exceed an engine speed of 4 500 rpm (revolutions per minute) and a road speed of 170 km/h (105 mph).

From 2 000 km (1 200 miles) to 3 000 km (2 000 miles):

- Engine and road speeds can be increased gradually.
- Engine speeds in excess of 5 000 rpm should only be used briefly e.g., when overtaking.

At all times, not just during the Running-in period:

- Do not exceed 4 000 rpm until the engine has reached full operating temperature.
- Avoid labouring the engine by operating the engine in too high a gear at low speeds.

PARTS AND ACCESSORIES

 **Do not fit non-approved parts and accessories or carry out non-approved alterations or conversions.**

AIRBAG SYSTEM

 **The components that make up the airbag system are sensitive to electrical or physical interference, either of which could easily damage the system and cause inadvertent operation or a malfunction of the airbag module.**

To prevent malfunction of the airbag system, always consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer before fitting any of the following:

- Electronic equipment such as a mobile phone, 2-way radio or in-car entertainment system.
- Accessories attached to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification involving the removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any of the airbag system components, including the steering wheel, steering column, instrument or facia panels.
- Any modification to the facia panels or steering wheel.

ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

 **No modifications or additions should be made to the Anti-theft system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.**

OWNER MAINTENANCE

 Any significant or sudden drop in fluid levels, or uneven tyre wear, should be reported to a qualified technician without delay.

In addition to the routine services and inspections, a number of simple checks must be carried out more frequently. These checks can be carried out by the owner and advice is given on the pages that follow.

DAILY CHECKS

- Operation of the lamps, horn, direction indicators, wipers, washers, and warning indicators.
- Operation of seat belts and brakes.
- Look for fluid deposits underneath the vehicle that might indicate a leak. Condensation drips from the air conditioning are normal.

WEEKLY CHECKS

- Engine oil level.
- Engine coolant level.
- Brake fluid level.
- Power steering fluid level.
- Screen washer fluid level.
- Tyre pressures and condition.
- Operate the air conditioning.

Note: The engine oil level should be checked more frequently if the vehicle is driven for prolonged periods at high speeds.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF)

Diesel vehicles equipped with a particle filter have more efficient emission control. The particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the filter during normal driving.

When a DPF message is displayed, accompanied by an amber warning lamp, the filter requires a regeneration cycle to clean itself. This requires the engine to have reached normal operating temperature. Regeneration takes place automatically at an interval of approximately 300-900 km (190-560 miles), depending on driving conditions. Regeneration normally takes 10-20 minutes and is automatically requested by the engine control module if the vehicle is driven steadily at vehicle speeds between 60 km/h to 112 km/h (40 mph to 70 mph). It is possible that the regeneration process will occur at lower vehicle speeds, but the events may take a little longer at a 50 km/h (30 mph) average speed.

Note: If regeneration is not successfully carried out, the amber warning lamp will eventually be replaced by a red warning lamp.

If a DPF message is displayed, accompanied by a red warning lamp, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

DRIVING SHORT DISTANCES OR IN COLD WEATHER

If the vehicle is frequently driven short distances or in cold weather conditions, then the engine may not reach normal operating temperature. This means that regeneration of the DPF does not take place and the filter is not efficiently cleaned. When the filter reaches a condition when a filter regeneration is appropriate and the current drive style is not appropriate, a warning triangle on the Instrument panel illuminates and the message **DPF Full. See manual** is displayed in the Message centre. This is not indicating a fault condition with the vehicle and no dealership support should be required. Start regeneration of the filter by driving the vehicle, preferably on a main road or motorway. The vehicle should then be driven for approximately 20 minutes or more.

When regeneration is complete, the warning text is cleared automatically.

Note: A small increase in fuel consumption may be noticed temporarily during regeneration.

ARDUOUS DRIVING CONDITIONS

When a vehicle is operated in severe or arduous conditions, more frequent attention must be paid to the servicing requirements. Refer to your Service book for further details, this is supplied in the vehicle's literature pack, or contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice.

SAFETY IN THE GARAGE

- ⚠ If the vehicle has been driven recently, do not touch exhaust and cooling system components until the engine has cooled.**
- ⚠ Never leave the engine running in an unventilated area.**
- ⚠ Do not work beneath the vehicle with a jack as the only means of support.**
- ⚠ WARNING - THAT NO PERSON SHOULD PLACE ANY PORTION OF THEIR BODY UNDER A VEHICLE THAT IS SUPPORTED BY A JACK.**
- ⚠ Keep your hands and clothing away from drive belts, pulleys and fans. Some fans may continue to operate after the engine has stopped.**
- ⚠ Remove metal wrist bands and jewellery, before working in the engine compartment.**
- ⚠ Do not touch electrical leads or components while the engine is running, or with the starter switch turned on.**
- ⚠ Do not allow tools or metal parts of the vehicle to make contact with the battery leads or terminals.**

FUEL SYSTEM

- ⚠ Under no circumstances, should any part of the fuel system be dismantled or replaced by anyone other than a suitably qualified vehicle technician.**
- ⚠ Make sure that sparks and naked lights are kept away from the engine compartment.**
- ⚠ Wear protective clothing, including, where practicable, gloves made from an impervious material.**

USED ENGINE OIL

Prolonged contact with engine oil may cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer of the skin. Always wash thoroughly after contact.

OPENING THE BONNET

- ⚠ Do not attempt to open the bonnet if the Pedestrian protection system has deployed.**



E143958

1. Pull the handle, located in the left side front footwell, to release the 2 bonnet locks.

2. Lift the safety catch lever located below the centre point of the bonnet and then raise the bonnet.

CLOSING THE BONNET

 **Do not drive with the bonnet retained by the safety catch alone.**

1. Lower the bonnet until the safety catch engages. Using both hands, press the bonnet down until the 2 catches click.
2. Check that both catches are fully engaged by attempting to lift both sides of the front edge of the bonnet. This should be free from all movement.

UNBLOCKING WASHER JETS

 Do not operate the washer jets during adjustment. Windscreen washer fluid may cause irritation to the eyes and skin. Always read and observe the washer fluid manufacturer's instructions.

If a washer jet becomes blocked, use a thin strand of wire to unblock the jet by inserting the wire into the jet. Make sure that the wire is completely removed after unblocking.

LAMP FAILURE

Headlamp unit

-  **Replacement or maintenance of Xenon lamps should only be carried out by suitably qualified personnel.**
-  **High voltage is required to ignite the Xenon lamps.**
-  **Xenon lamp units operate at a very high temperature. Make sure that the lamp units have cooled before attempting to touch them.**
-  **Used Xenon lamp units contain mercury which is hazardous and can be injurious to health.**

 All other lamps within the headlamp unit are LEDs and should only be replaced by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Correct disposal of the Xenon lamp unit should be referred to your Jaguar Dealer/Authorised Repairer or your local authority.

Side, repeater and rear lamps

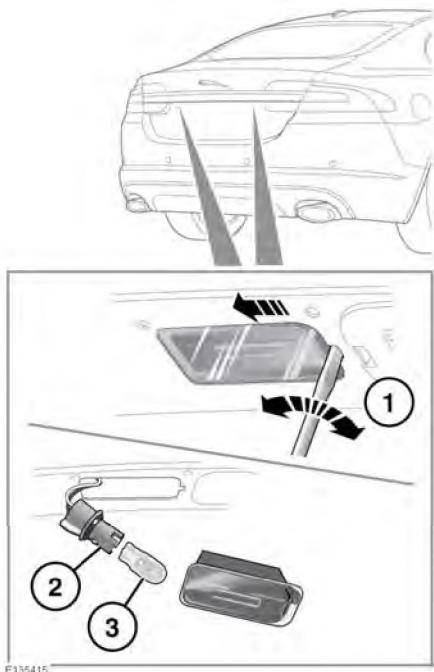
 These lamps are LED units and should only be replaced by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

LICENCE PLATE LAMP BULB REPLACEMENT

 Always replace bulbs with the correct type and specification. If you are in any doubt, contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice.

 Before attempting to replace a bulb, make sure that both the affected lamp and the ignition are turned off. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle's electrical system may occur.

Licence plate lamps each contain a 5 Watt W5W bulb.



To replace a bulb:

1. Insert a small flat-bladed screwdriver into the indent, as shown, and carefully lever out the side of the lamp unit and remove.
2. Twist the bulb holder 90 degrees counter-clockwise to access the bulb.
3. Pull to remove the bulb from the holder.

WIPERS SERVICE POSITION

Note: The Smart key must remain in the vehicle while the wiper blades are replaced.

Before changing a wiper blade, the wiper arms must be set in the 'service' position as follows:

1. Make sure the ignition is turned **OFF**.
2. Turn the ignition **ON** and then **OFF** again.

3. Immediately pull the wash/wipe control towards the driver (as if to command a single wipe), hold this position while turning **ON** the ignition again.
4. The wipers will move to their service position.
5. When the new parts have been fitted, turn the ignition **OFF**. This will return the wipers to the park position.

Note: Fit only replacement wiper blades that are identical to the original specification.

SUNROOF RESET

If the battery is disconnected, or the power supply is interrupted, while the sunroof is partially open it will need to be reset.

Once the power supply is restored, reset the sunroof as follows:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the front of the sunroof switch, so that the sunroof is in the tilt position, then release the switch.
3. Press the front of the sunroof switch and hold for 30 seconds.
4. After 30 seconds, the sunroof will begin to move. Keep the front of the switch pressed until the sunroof has fully opened, then closed.
5. Once the open/close cycle has completed and the sunroof has stopped moving, release the switch.

The sunroof can now be operated as normal.

WINDOW RESET

The windows will need to be reset if the battery is disconnected, becomes discharged, or the power supply is interrupted.

Once the power supply is restored, reset the windows as follows:

1. Close the window fully.
2. Release the switch, then lift it to the close position and hold for 2 seconds.
3. Release the switch.
4. Repeat the lift and release procedure twice more.
5. Test the window for correct One-touch operation. See **62, ONE-TOUCH WINDOW OPERATION**.
6. Repeat the procedure on each window.

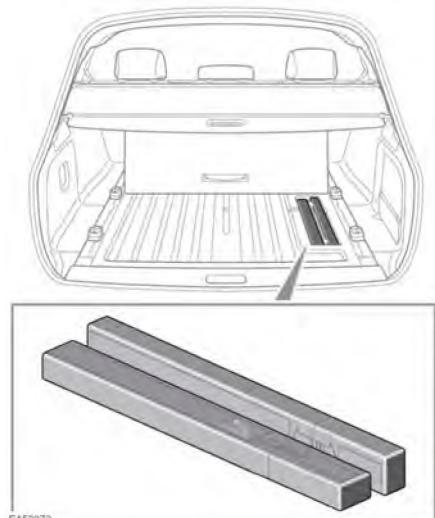
Note: *It is advisable to have the engine running while resetting the windows, to make sure that a minimum of 12 volts is available at all times.*

FIRST AID KIT

If supplied, the First aid kit is strapped to the side of the Luggage compartment.

WARNING TRIANGLE

If supplied, the Warning triangle is located in the Luggage compartment, attached to an anchor point.



For Sportbrake models, a Warning triangle is stored in a rear floor recess.

ALLOY WHEELS

- ! Only use approved wheel cleaning products.

THE EXTERIOR

- ! Never use cleaning products which are not approved for use on vehicles.
- ! Following cleaning of the vehicle exterior (particularly with a pressure washer), it is recommended that the vehicle is taken for a short drive in order to dry out the brakes.
- ! Some high pressure cleaning systems are sufficiently powerful to penetrate door and window seals, and damage trim and door locks. Never aim the water jet directly at the engine air intake, heater air intakes, radiator cooling fins, body seals or at any components which may be damaged.

Do not aim the water jet directly at any rubber gaiters or seals on suspension joints.

Make sure that the water jet nozzle is more than 300 mm (11.8 in) away from vehicle components.

SENSORS AND CAMERAS

- ! When washing the vehicle do not aim high pressure water jets directly at any of the sensors and cameras. Do not use abrasive materials or hard/sharp objects to clean the sensors and cameras. Only use approved vehicle shampoo.

Parking aids sensors should be kept clean to maintain accuracy and performance.

If required, the cameras should be cleaned using a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass-cleaning product.

PAINTWORK

- ! Substances which are corrosive, such as bird droppings, can damage the vehicle's paintwork and should be removed as soon as possible.

USING AN AUTOMATIC WASH

- ! Commercially operated automatic car washes, jet washes and power-operated mops, are not recommended.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Regularly inspect the paintwork for damage. Any stone chips, fractures, or deep scratches, in the paint/bodywork should be repaired promptly. Bare metal will corrode quickly, and if left untreated can result in expensive repairs.

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

- ! Do not use a high pressure washer or steam cleaner in the engine compartment.
- ! Make sure that the brake fluid reservoir is kept dry at all times. Only use a clean, dry cloth to clean the brake fluid cap and reservoir.

GLASS SURFACES

Clean the rear window with a soft cloth to avoid damaging the heating element. Do not scrape the glass or use any abrasive cleaning fluid.

Mirror glass is particularly susceptible to damage. Wash with soapy water. Do not use abrasive cleaning compounds or metal scrapers to remove ice.

To avoid damaging the protecting coating, only clean the interior side of the sunroof glass with a soft cloth. Do not scrape the glass or use abrasive cleaning fluids.

REAR SCREEN

To avoid damaging the heating elements when cleaning the inside of the rear screen, use only a soft damp cloth or chamois leather. Do not use solvents or sharp objects to clean the glass.

SUNROOF WIND DEFLECTOR

A mild solution of soap and water, or car shampoo, should be used to clean the wind deflector net periodically. Support the underside of the net with a soft cloth, and gently scrub the net using a soft bristled brush.

REMOVING GREASE AND TAR

Remove grease or tar with Jaguar Tar Remover or methylated spirit (alcohol). White spirit is also effective, but must not be applied to rubber, particularly the windscreens wiper blades.

! Make sure that after using methylated or white spirit, the area is washed immediately with soapy water, to remove all traces of spirit.

POLISHING

! Chrome polish, or other abrasive cleaners, must not be used on the vehicle's brightwork.

It is recommended that the vehicle is polished regularly using Jaguar polish and a polishing cloth.

THE INTERIOR

! The steering wheel centre pad and other areas containing airbags should only be cleaned sparingly with a damp cloth, warm water and a non-detergent soap.

LEATHER UPHOLSTERY

To prevent ingrained dirt and staining, inspect the seat upholstery regularly and clean every 1 to 2 months, as follows:

- Wipe off fine dust from the seat surfaces using a clean, damp, non-coloured cloth. Change frequently to a clean area of cloth, to avoid abrasive action on the leather surface. Avoid over-wetting.
- If this is not sufficient, use a cloth which has been dampened with warm soapy water and then wrung out. Use only mild non-caustic soap.
- Use Jaguar approved Leather Cleaner for heavily soiled areas. Dry off and rub with a clean soft cloth, changing surfaces regularly.

Use Jaguar approved Leather Cleaner several times a year to maintain its appearance and suppleness. The cleaner will nourish and moisturise and help to improve the surface protective film against dust and substances.

- Do not use solvents. Do not use detergents, furniture polish or household cleaners. While these products may initially give impressive results, their use will lead to rapid deterioration of the leather and will invalidate the warranty. Jaguar recommend a basic set of products that have been specially selected for the type of leather in your vehicle.
- Dark clothing may stain leather seats just like other upholstery products.
- Sharp objects such as belts, zip fasteners, rivets, etc., can leave permanent scratches and scratch marks on the leather surface.
- Unless spillages such as tea, coffee or ink are washed away immediately, permanent staining may have to be accepted.

If a valet service is used, make sure that the specialist concerned is aware of, and follows, these instructions precisely.

FABRIC UPHOLSTERY

- ⚠ Never use soap, ammonia, bleach or other cleaners intended for use on hard surfaces.
- ⚠ Do not use upholstery cleaner on electrical equipment such as fascia switches.
- ⚠ When cleaning around electrical equipment such as switches, make sure that fluids do not leak into any gaps around the components or between panels or trim.

Use Jaguar Upholstery Cleaner, following the instructions. Avoid over-wetting.

REMOVING STAINS

Most stains on woollen fabric can be removed if treatment is carried out immediately, before the stain has a chance to dry-in.

Most stains can be treated with one of three cleaning fluids: Jaguar Upholstery Cleaner, dry cleaning fluid or clean water. Follow the instructions on the package.

INSTRUMENT PANEL, TOUCH SCREEN AND AUDIO SYSTEM

Only use a soft dry cloth to clean the Instrument panel, Touch screen and audio system. Do not use cleaning fluids or sprays.

CARPET AND MATS

Marks or stains can be removed by gentle scrubbing with a weak solution of soap and warm water.

For more stubborn stains a commercially available carpet cleaner should be used.

SEAT BELTS

- ⚠ Do not allow any water, cleaning products, or fabric from cloths to enter the seat belt mechanism. Any substance which enters the mechanism may affect the performance of the seat belt in an impact.

Extend the seat belts fully, then use warm water and a non-detergent soap to clean. Allow the seat belts to dry naturally while fully extended and do not allow the belts to retract until fully dry.

***Note:** While cleaning the seat belt, take the opportunity to examine the webbing for damage and wear. Any wear or damage should be reported to, and rectified by, a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.*

AIRBAG MODULE COVERS

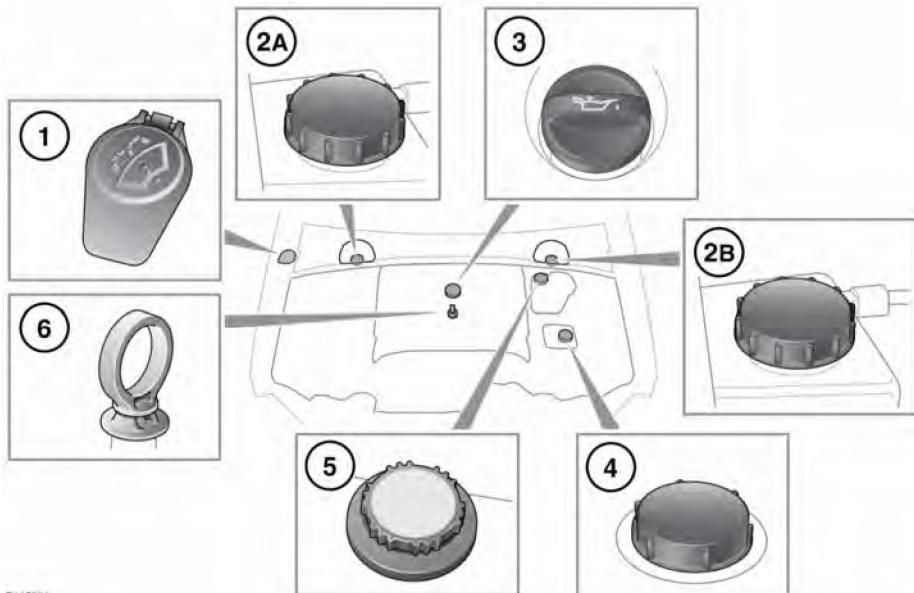
- ⚠ Airbag covers should only be cleaned using a slightly dampened cloth and a small amount of upholstery cleaner.

- ⚠ Any substance which enters the mechanism, can prevent correct deployment of an airbag during an impact.

Fluid level checks

FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS

2.0 litre petrol engine

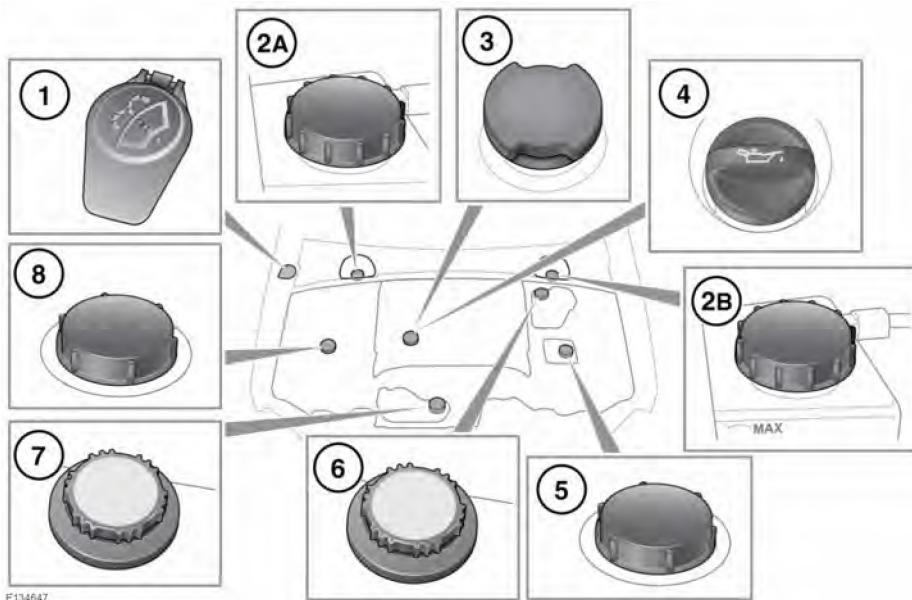


E147394

1. Washer fluid.
2. Brake fluid:
 - A. Right-hand drive vehicles.
 - B. Left-hand drive vehicles.
3. Engine oil.
4. Power steering.
5. Coolant.
6. Engine oil dipstick.

⚠ Do not drive the vehicle if there is a possibility that leaked fluid will come into contact with a hot surface, such as the exhaust.

3.0 litre and 2.2 litre diesel engines

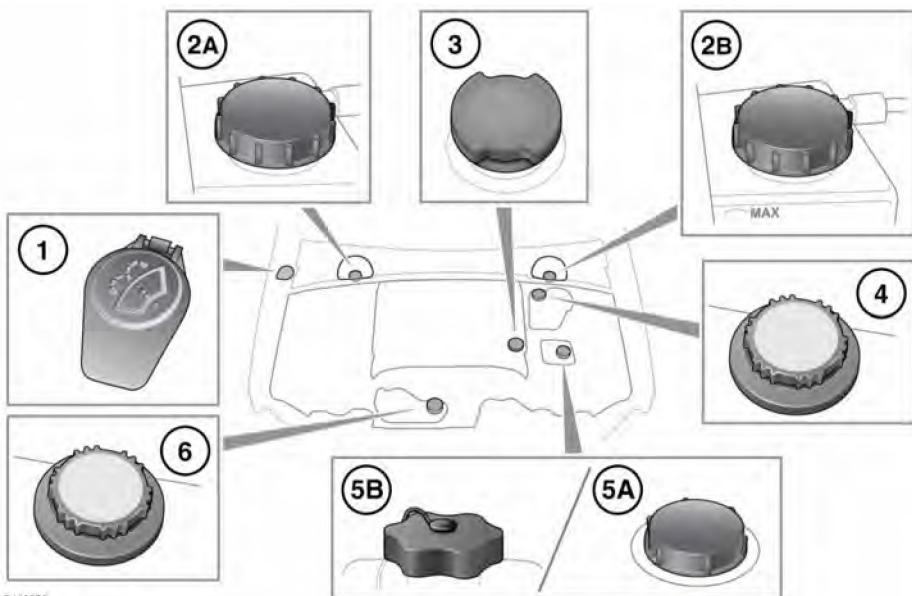


1. Washer fluid.
2. Brake fluid:
 - A. Right-hand drive vehicles.
 - B. Left-hand drive vehicles.
3. Engine oil (3.0L).
4. Engine oil (2.2L).
5. Power steering (2.2L).
6. Coolant (2.2L).
7. Coolant (3.0L).

⚠ Do not drive the vehicle if there is a possibility that leaked fluid will come into contact with a hot surface, such as the exhaust.

Fluid level checks

5.0 litre and 3.0 litre petrol engines



E143950

1. Washer fluid.
2. Brake fluid:
 - A. Right-hand drive vehicles.
 - B. Left-hand drive vehicles.
3. Engine oil.
4. Coolant (5.0L).
5. Power steering.
 - A. 5.0L.
 - B. 3.0L.
6. Coolant (3.0L).

⚠ Do not drive the vehicle if there is a possibility that leaked fluid will come into contact with a hot surface, such as the exhaust.

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

! Check the engine oil weekly. If any significant or sudden drop in the oil level is noted, seek qualified assistance.

A certain amount of oil consumption is normal. The rate of consumption will depend on the following:

- The quality and viscosity of the oil.
- Climatic conditions.
- The speed at which the engine is being operated.
- Road conditions.

Drivers should expect above normal consumption when the engine is new and after running-in, if high speeds are sustained.

! If the message **ENGINE OIL PRESSURE LOW** is displayed, stop the engine as soon as it is safe to do so and seek qualified assistance. Do not start the engine until the cause has been rectified.

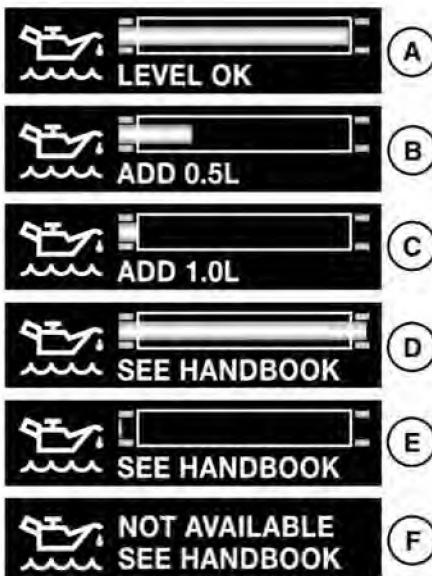
All engines (except for 2.0 litre petrol engine)

Prior to checking the oil level make, sure that:

- The vehicle is on level ground.
- The engine oil has reached working temperature (oil is hot).
- The engine has been switched off for 10 minutes, as the system will not give an accurate reading until the oil level has stabilised.

The oil level can then be checked as follows:

1. Switch on the ignition (do not start the engine).
2. Make sure that transmission **P** is selected.
3. Repeatedly press the Trip button, on the end of the lighting control stalk (see 41, **USING THE TRIP COMPUTER**), until the oil can icon, along with the current oil level status and topping up advice is displayed in the Message centre, as follows:



E134345

- A. Oil level at recommended level. No top up is required.
- B. Add 0.5 litres (0.9 pints) of oil.
- C. Add 1 litre (1.8 pints) of oil.
- D. Oil level is above the maximum amount for safe operation. Do not drive the vehicle. Seek qualified assistance.
- E. Oil level is below the minimum amount for safe operation. Add 1.5 litres (2.6 pints) of oil, then recheck the level.
- F. Oil level stabilising, oil level not available. Wait 10 minutes, then recheck the oil level display. If this display is accompanied by the warning message **ENGINE OIL LEVEL MONITOR SYSTEM FAULT**, seek qualified assistance.

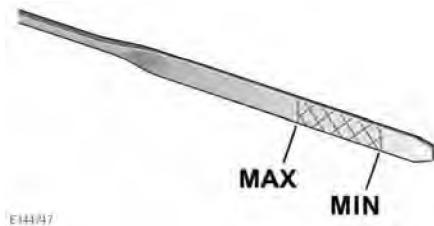
2.0 litre petrol engines

Prior to checking the oil level, make sure:

- The vehicle is on level ground.

Fluid level checks

- The engine oil has reached working temperature (oil is hot).
- The engine has been switched off for 5 minutes, allowing the oil to drain into the sump. Do not start the engine.



1. Withdraw the dipstick and wipe the blade clean with a lint-free cloth.
2. Fully re-insert the dipstick and withdraw again to check the oil level. Never allow the oil level to fall below the lower mark (MIN) on the dipstick. As a general guide, if the level on the dipstick:
 - Is nearer to the upper mark than the lower, add no oil.
 - Is nearer to the lower mark than the upper, add 0.5 litres (0.9 pints) of oil.
 - Is below the lower mark, add 0.8 litres (1.4 pints) of oil and re-check the level after a further 5 minutes.

TOPPING UP THE OIL

- Failure to use an oil that meets the required specification could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increase pollution. It could also lead to engine failure. Do not use low quality or obsolete oils.
- Your vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by using oil that does not meet the required specification.



Overfilling with oil could result in severe engine damage. Oil should be added in small quantities and the level re-checked to make sure the engine is not overfilled.



Do not use oil additives of any type, as engine damage could occur. Use only specified lubricants.

It is essential to use the correct specification oil and to make sure it is suitable for the climatic conditions in which the vehicle is to be operated. See **209, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

All engines (except for 2.0 litre petrol engine)

1. Unscrew the oil filler cap.
2. Add oil as indicated by the Message centre display.
3. Wait 5 minutes for the oil level to stabilise, then re-check.

2.0 litre petrol engine

1. Unscrew the oil filler cap.
2. Add oil as indicated by the level on the dipstick.
3. Wait 5 minutes for the oil level to stabilise, then re-check.

Jaguar recommends:

Castrol EDGE Professional



CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL

- Running the engine without coolant will cause serious engine damage.
- If persistent coolant loss is noticed, seek qualified assistance immediately.

The coolant level in the expansion tank should be checked at least weekly (more frequently in high distance or severe operating conditions).

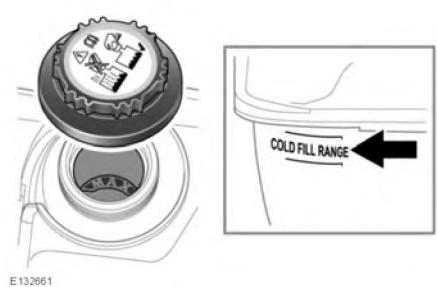
⚠ Always check the coolant level when the system is cold.

Make sure the coolant level is maintained between the level indicator marks, as shown in the illustrations.

Diesel engines



Petrol engines



If coolant/steam is expelled from the pressure cap, or the level has dropped suddenly, or by a large amount, arrange for the vehicle to be examined by a qualified technician as soon as possible.

If the message **LOW COOLANT LEVEL** is displayed in the Message centre, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and top up the coolant reservoir with the recommended antifreeze/water mix.

If the Message centre displays the message **ENGINE OVERHEATING**, pull off the carriageway and allow the engine to idle for 5 minutes and then switch off the ignition for 10 minutes. Switch on the engine and, provided that the warning does not occur, continue your journey, avoiding harsh acceleration. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

TOPPING UP THE COOLANT

⚠ Never remove the filler cap when the engine is hot.

⚠ Antifreeze is highly inflammable. Do not allow antifreeze to come into contact with naked flames or other sources of ignition (e.g., a hot engine) - a fire may result.

⚠ Unscrew the filler cap slowly, allowing the pressure to escape before removing completely.

⚠ When travelling in territories where the water supply contains salt, always make sure you carry a supply of fresh (rain or distilled) water. Topping up with salt water will cause serious engine damage.

Top-up to the upper level indicator mark. Use only a 50% mix of water and antifreeze. See **209, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

***Note:** In an emergency, if the approved antifreeze is unavailable, top-up the system with clean water, but be aware of the resultant reduction in frost protection. Do not top-up or refill with conventional antifreeze formulations. If in doubt, consult a qualified technician.*

Fluid level checks

Make sure that the cap is tightened fully after top-up is completed, by turning the cap until the ratchet cap clicks.

CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID LEVEL

⚠ Seek qualified assistance immediately if brake pedal travel is unusually long, unusually short, or if there is any significant loss of brake fluid. Driving under such conditions could result in extended stopping distances or complete brake failure.

Note: If the warning lamp illuminates or the message is displayed while the vehicle is being driven, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits by gently applying the brakes. Check and top-up the fluid level, if necessary.

See 43, BRAKE (RED)

⚠ Brake fluid is highly toxic - keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.

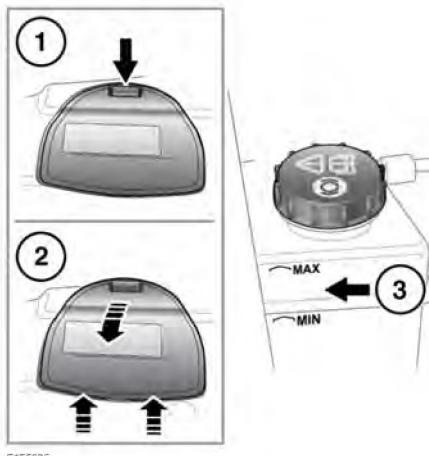
⚠ If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of clean water.

⚠ Brake fluid is highly inflammable. Do not allow brake fluid to come into contact with naked flames or other sources of ignition (e.g., a hot engine).

⚠ Do not drive the vehicle with the fluid level below the MIN mark.

With the vehicle on level ground, check the fluid level at least every week (more frequently with high distance driving or arduous operating conditions).

The brake fluid reservoir is located beneath a cover on the raised platform, to the rear of the engine compartment. See 162, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS.



1. Release the catch and lift the cover forwards.
2. Pull the cover rearwards, to release the hinges.
3. The brake fluid level should be between the MIN and the MAX marks on the side of the reservoir.

The fluid level may drop slightly during normal use, as a result of brake pad wear, but should not be allowed to drop below the MIN mark.

TOPPING UP THE BRAKE FLUID

⚠ Brake fluid will damage painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

⚠ Only use new fluid from an airtight container (fluid from open containers or fluid previously bled from the system, will have absorbed moisture, which will adversely affect performance and must not be used).

1. Clean the filler cap with a dry, clean cloth before removing. This will help to prevent dirt or moisture from entering the reservoir.
2. Remove the filler cap.
3. Top up the reservoir with the specified brake fluid to at least the **MIN** mark. See **209, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.
4. Replace the filler cap.
5. Refit the cover.

CHECKING THE POWER STEERING FLUID LEVEL

- ⚠ Power steering fluid is highly toxic. Keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption of fluid is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.**
- ⚠ If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of clean water.**
- ⚠ Power steering fluid is highly inflammable. Do not allow power steering fluid to come into contact with naked flames or other sources of ignition (e.g., a hot engine).**
- ⚠ The engine must not be started if the fluid level has dropped below the **MIN** mark.**
- ⚠ Seek qualified assistance immediately, if there is a noticeable drop in the fluid level.**

! If fluid loss is slow, the reservoir may be topped up to the upper level mark to enable the vehicle to be driven to a repair facility for examination. However, it is recommended that you seek qualified assistance before driving the vehicle.

Check and top up the fluid with the vehicle on level ground, with the engine switched off, and the system cold. Make sure that the steering wheel is not turned after stopping the engine.

The level of fluid can be seen through the translucent body of the power steering fluid reservoir. See **162, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS**.

The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

TOPPING UP THE POWER STEERING FLUID

! It is imperative that the power steering system does not become contaminated in any way. Always use new fluid and clean the area around the filler neck, both before removing the filler cap and after topping up. Never return drained fluid to the system.

! Power steering fluid will damage painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

1. Clean the filler cap before removing, to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
2. Remove the filler cap.
3. Top-up the reservoir until the fluid level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks. For the power steering fluid specification, see **209, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.
4. Replace the filler cap.

Fluid level checks

CHECKING THE WASHER FLUID LEVEL

-  Some screen washer products are flammable, do not allow screen washer fluid to come into contact with naked flames or sources of ignition.
-  If the vehicle is operated in temperatures below 4°C (40°F), use a washer fluid with frost protection.
-  Only screen washer fluid products, which are approved for automotive use, should be used and then only in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
-  Take care to avoid spillage, particularly if an undiluted or high concentration is being used. If spillage occurs, wash the affected area immediately with water.

The washer reservoir supplies the windscreen and headlamp washer jets.

Check and top up the washer fluid reservoir level at least every week. See **162, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS**.

Operate the washers periodically to check that the nozzles are clear and properly directed.

TOPPING UP THE WASHER FLUID

1. Clean the filler cap before opening, to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
2. Open the filler cap.
3. Top-up the reservoir with the specified washer fluid until the fluid is visible in the filler neck. See **209, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.
4. Close the filler cap.

BATTERY WARNING SYMBOLS



Do not allow naked flames or other sources of ignition near the battery, as the battery may emit explosive gases.



Ensure that when working near or handling the battery, suitable eye protection is worn, to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



To prevent risk of injury, do not allow children near the battery.



Be aware that the battery may emit explosive gases.



The battery contains acid which is extremely corrosive and toxic.



Consult the handbook for information, before handling the battery.

BATTERY CARE



If swallowed, battery electrolyte can be fatal, seek medical assistance immediately.



If battery electrolyte comes into contact with your eyes, skin, or clothes you should remove the affected clothing and flush the skin/eyes with copious amounts of clean water. Seek medical assistance immediately.



Do not connect any 12-volt equipment directly to the battery terminals. Doing so may cause a spark, which can result in an explosion.



The cell plugs and vent pipe must be in place at all times when the battery is connected to the vehicle. Make sure that the vent pipe is clear of obstructions and not kinked. Failure to do so may cause a pressure build up in the battery, resulting in an explosion.



Do not expose the battery to a naked flame or spark, as the battery produces explosive, flammable gas.



Never jump start (boost), charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so can result in an explosion.



Remove all metal jewellery before working on, or near, the battery, and never allow metal tools or vehicle components to come into contact with the battery terminals.



Do not allow the battery posts or terminals to come into contact with your skin. They contain lead and lead compounds, which are toxic. Always wash your hands thoroughly after handling the battery.



Do not allow battery electrolyte to come into contact with fabrics or painted surfaces. If battery electrolyte comes into contact with any surface, the surface should be washed down immediately with copious amounts of clean water.

The vehicle's battery is located under the floor of the Luggage compartment. The battery will be either a low maintenance acid battery or an Absorbed Glass Mat (AGM) battery. AGM batteries are sealed for life and require no maintenance.



Do not attempt to open or remove the top of an AGM battery.

In hot climates, a low maintenance battery will require more frequent checks of the electrolyte (battery fluid) level. If the fluid level is low, the battery cells can be topped up with distilled water. Consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

BATTERY MONITORING SYSTEM (BMS)

The Intelligent Power System Management (IPSM) continuously monitors the condition of the main vehicle battery. If excessive battery discharge occurs, the system will begin to shut down non-essential electrical systems in order to protect the battery. If the IPSM calculates that battery condition is not within set parameters, there are 2 levels of action which may be taken automatically. Both levels have an accompanying message on the Touch screen, and in the case of the low battery warning, in the Message centre.

- **Energy Management:** Will be displayed on the Touch screen if the engine is not running and system features are causing excessive battery discharge. After 3 minutes, the IPSM will begin shutting down the vehicle's systems. Normal system operation will resume when the engine is started.

- **Low Battery - Please Start Engine:** Will be displayed on the Touch screen and in the Message centre if the engine is not running. After 3 minutes, the IPSM will begin shutting down the vehicle's systems. Normal system operation will resume when the engine is started.

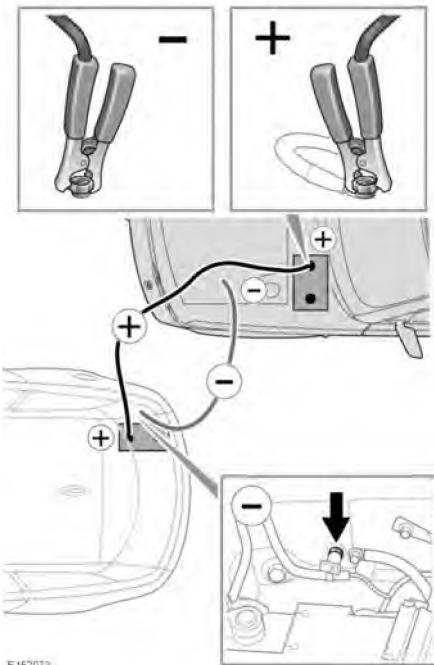
 Only start the engine if it is safe to do so.

Note: If the message **Low Battery - Please Start Engine** is displayed, drive the vehicle for at least 30 minutes in temperatures above 0°C (32°F), or at least 60 minutes if temperatures are below 0°C (32°F). This will allow the battery to recover to an acceptable level. If normal system operation is not resumed when the engine is switched to off, the battery may not have been sufficiently charged. If safe to do so, restart the engine. If problems still exist, contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

CONNECTING JUMP LEADS

-  Always wear appropriate eye protection when working with batteries.
-  Do not disconnect the discharged battery.
-  Do not connect a jump lead to the negative (-) terminal of the battery. Always connect to the recommended earthing point.
-  Make sure the bodywork of the donor and disabled vehicles do not touch.
-  Make sure that both batteries are of the 12-volt type and that the jump leads have insulated clamps and are approved for use with 12 volt batteries.
-  If the vehicle is fitted with a dual battery system, the larger of the 2 batteries must be used when connecting jump leads.

Note: Before connecting jump leads, make sure that the battery connections on the disabled vehicle are correct and that all electrical equipment has been switched off.



1. Connect the positive jump lead (red) to the positive terminal on the donor vehicle's battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive jump lead to the positive (+) terminal on the disabled vehicle's battery.
3. Connect the negative jump lead (black) to the recommended jump starting earth point of the donor vehicle.
4. Connect the other end of the negative jump lead cable to the earth point on the disabled vehicle.
 - Check that all cables are clear of any moving components and that all 4 connections are secure.
5. Start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to idle for a few minutes.

6. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

Note: If repeated attempts to start the disabled vehicle are needed, allow the donor vehicle to idle for a few minutes between attempts.

7. Allow both vehicles to idle for 2 minutes.
8. Switch off the donor vehicle.

DISCONNECTING JUMP LEADS

⚠ To avoid serious injury, use extreme caution when removing the jump leads as the engine will be running on the previously disabled vehicle. This means that you may be working close to components which are moving at high speed, carry high voltage, or may be hot.

Note: Do not switch on any electrical equipment until after the leads have been disconnected.

The engine should be running on the previously disabled vehicle and the engine switched off on the donor vehicle. Disconnect the jump leads in the exact reverse order of that used for connection.

CONNECTING A STARTING AID

To start the vehicle using a starting aid or a slave battery, follow the instructions in the sequence given:

1. Connect the positive (Red) cable to the positive terminal of the disabled vehicle.
2. Connect the negative (Black) cable to the earth point of the disabled vehicle.
3. Connect/switch on the starting aid.
4. Start the engine and allow it to idle.
5. Disconnect/switch off the starting aid.
6. Disconnect the negative (Black) cable from the earth point of the vehicle.

Vehicle battery

7. Disconnect the positive (Red) cable from the positive terminal of the vehicle.

CHARGING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

- ! The battery must be disconnected and removed from the vehicle before charging.
- ! Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement, should only be carried out by qualified personnel. Consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

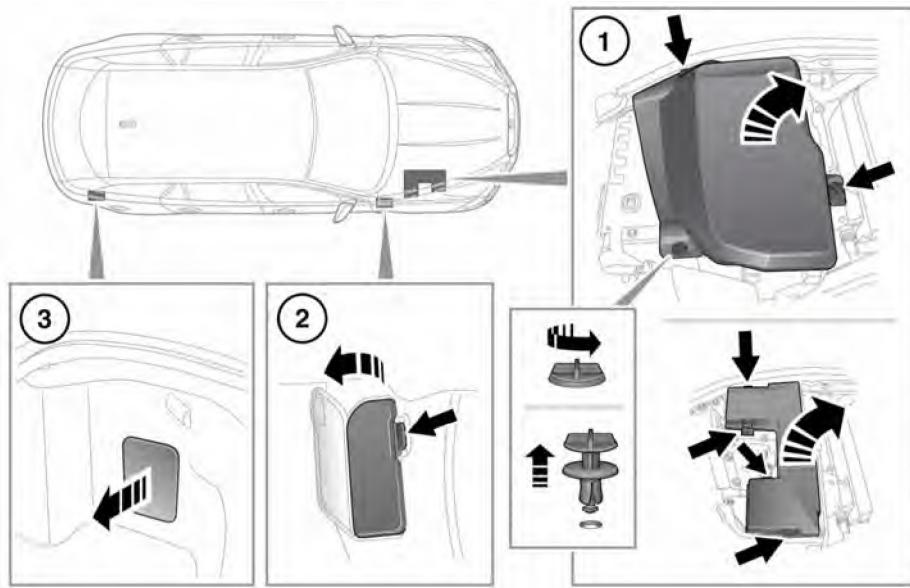
REPLACING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

- ! Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement, should only be carried out by qualified personnel. Consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.



Used batteries must be disposed of correctly, as they contain a number of harmful substances. Seek advice from your Dealer/Authorised Repairer and/or your local authority.

FUSE BOX LOCATIONS



E143962

➊ When a fuse box lid is removed, take care to protect the box from moisture and refit the lid at the earliest opportunity.

There are 3 separate fuse boxes fitted to the vehicle, each 1 containing fuses protecting a different group of circuits.

1. The engine compartment fuse box.
 - The engine cover must be removed first. Release the turnbuckles and remove the cover.
 - To remove the fuse box cover, press the release catches and lift up.
2. The passenger compartment fuse box.
3. The luggage compartment fuse box.

CHANGING A FUSE

➋ Always turn off the ignition system and the affected electrical circuit, before replacing a fuse.

➋ Fit Jaguar approved replacement fuses of the same rating and type, or fuses of a matching specification.

➋ If the replacement fuse blows after installation, the system should be checked by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Note: *Jaguar recommend that owners do not remove or replace relays. It is recommended that you seek qualified assistance in the event of a relay failure.*

Spare fuses and a fuse removal tool, are located in the engine compartment fuse box.

Fuses

ENGINE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse No	Rating (amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit
F1	40A	Orange	Fuel control module.
F2	-	-	-
F3	-	-	-
F4	-	-	-
F5	40A	Orange	ABS pump.
F6	30A	Green	Power wash pump.
F7	50A	Red	Cigar lighter.
F8	30A	Green	All wheel drive.
F9	50A	Red	Engine management system.
F10	20A	Yellow	Twin start solenoid.
F11	-	-	-
F12	-	-	-
F13	30A	Green	Wipers.
F14	30A	Green	Starter solenoid.
F15	40A	Orange	Front screen heater - LH.
F16	40A	Orange	Front screen heater - RH.
F17	-	-	-
F18	-	-	-
F19	5A	Tan	Adaptive cruise control. FLS.
F20	15A	Blue	Horn.
F21	25A	Clear	ABS valves.
F22	-	-	-
F23	5A	Tan	STR monitor.
F24	-	-	-
F25	10A	Red	ABS.
F26	10A	Red	Engine management system, Transmission control module.
F27	-	-	-
F28	5A	Tan	Adaptive front lighting - LH.

Fuse No	Rating (amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit
F29	5A	Tan	Adaptive front lighting - RH.
F30	20A	Yellow	Emissions.
F31	20A	Yellow	Auxiliary power socket - rear.
F32	20A	Yellow	Cigar lighter.
F33	20A	Yellow	Emissions.
F34	20A	Yellow	Emissions.
F35	5A	Tan	Air conditioning compressor clutch.
F36	-	-	-
F37	15A	Blue	Ignition coils.
F38	5A	Tan	Power steering.
F39	5A	Tan	Headlamp levelling system.
F40	15A	Blue	Water pump (supercharged vehicles only).
F41	10A	Red	Engine management system 1.
F42	10A 30A	Red Green	Engine management system 2 (V8 petrol). Engine management system 2 (V6 petrol).
F43	10A	Red	Engine management system 3.
F44	15A	Blue	Engine management system 4 (V8 petrol).
F45	100A	Violet	Radiator cooling fan (V8 petrol).

Fuses

PASSENGER COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse No	Rating (amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit
F1	250A	-	Control module.
F2	-	-	-
F3	20A	Yellow	Driver's seat adjustment.
F4	20A	Yellow	Driver's seat adjustment.
F5	20A	Yellow	Left side rear door controls.
F6	-	-	-
F7	-	-	-
F8	-	-	-
F9	20A	Yellow	Front passenger's seat adjustment.
F10	20A	Yellow	Front passenger's seat adjustment.
F11	20A	Yellow	Right side rear door controls.
F12	-	-	-
F13	-	-	-
F14	-	-	-
F15	5A	Tan	Brake pedal switch.
F16	5A	Tan	Instrument pack.
F17	-	-	-
F18	5A	Tan	Integrated control panel.
F19	15A	Blue	Sunroof.
F20	10A	Red	Driver's seat adjustment.
F21	-	-	-
F22	-	-	-
F23	10A	Red	Air conditioning.
F24	-	-	-
F25	-	-	-
F26	10A	Red	Front passenger's seat adjustment.
F27	20A	Yellow	Driver's heated/climate seat.
F28	-	-	-

Fuse No	Rating (amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit
F29	20A	Yellow	Front passenger's heated/climate seat.
F30	5A	Tan	Diagnostics.
F31	5A	Tan	Anti theft system.
F32	-	-	-
F33	-	-	-
F34	5A	Tan	Instrument pack.
F35	5A	Tan	Electric parking brake.
F36	10A	Red	Column adjust.

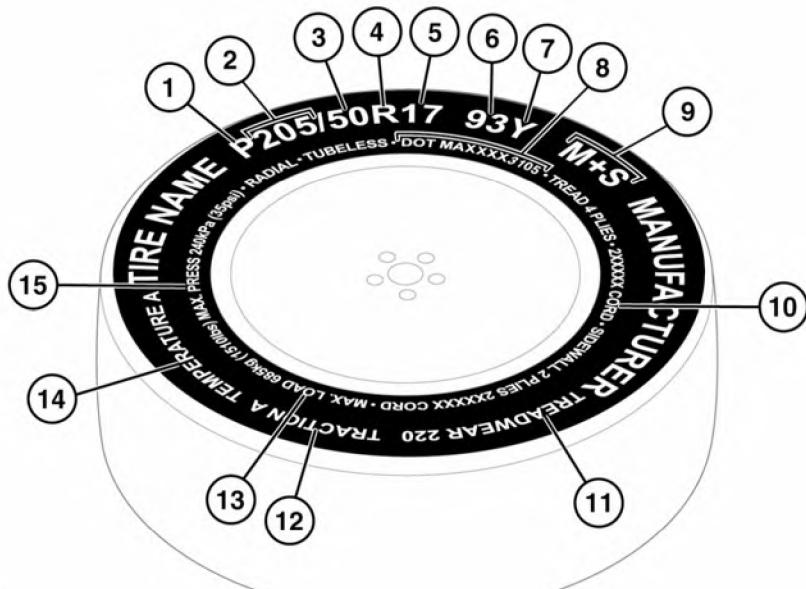
Fuses

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse No	Rating (amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit
F1	250A	-	Battery control module.
F2	-	-	-
F3	30A	Green	Electric parking brake.
F4	40A	Orange	Audio system amplifier.
F5	40A	Orange	Left side retractable seat belt.
F6	40A	Orange	Diagnostic link.
F7	-	-	-
F8	-	-	-
F9	40A	Orange	Electronic differential.
F10	40A	Orange	Right side retractable seat belt.
F11	-	-	-
F12	-	-	-
F13	10A	Red	Sportbrake air suspension.
F14	20A	Yellow	Dual battery module.
F15	25A	Clear	Sportbrake power operated tailgate.
F16	25A	Clear	Driver's door module.
F17	10A	Red	Sportbrake constant variable damping.
F18	15A	Blue	Accessories.
F19	5A	Tan	RF receiver.
F20	5A	Tan	Gateway module.
F21	5A	Tan	Power amp detect.
F22	5A	Tan	SDARS, TV, DVD, DAB radio.
F23	15A	Blue	Audio module.
F24	15A	Blue	Touchscreen.
F25	-	-	-
F26	25A	Clear	Passenger's door module.
F27	-	-	-
F28	15A	Blue	Accessories.

Fuse No	Rating (amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit
F29	-	-	-
F30	20A	Yellow	Remote function actuator.
F31	5A	Tan	Remote function actuator.
F32	5A	Tan	Tyre pressure monitoring system.
F33	10A	Red	Navigation.
F34	10A	Red	Gear shift module, Communications media module.
F35	5A	Tan	Fuel pressure valve, W2A.
F36	-	-	-

TYRE MARKINGS



E135318

1. P indicates that the tyre is for passenger vehicle use. This index is not always shown.
2. The width of the tyre from sidewall edge to sidewall edge in millimetres.
3. The aspect ratio, also known as the profile, gives the sidewall height as a percentage of the tread width. So, if the tread width is 205 mm and the aspect ratio is 50, the sidewall height will be 102 mm.
4. R indicates that the tyre is of Radial ply construction.
5. The diameter of the wheel rim, given in inches.
6. The load index for the tyre. This index is not always shown.

⚠ The load index and speed rating on all replacement tyres must be, at least, the same specification as the Original Equipment (OE). If in doubt, consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

7. The speed rating denotes the maximum speed at which the tyre should be used for extended periods. See 183, SPEED RATING.
8. Tyre manufacturing standard information, which can be used for tyre recalls and other checking processes. Most of this information relates to the manufacturer, place of manufacture, etc. The last four numbers are the date of manufacture. For example, if the number was 3106, the tyre was made in the 31st week of 2006.
9. M+S or M/S indicates that the tyre has been designed with some capability for mud and snow.

10. The number of plies in both the tread area, and the sidewall area, indicates how many layers of rubber-coated material make up the structure of the tyre. Information is also provided on the type of materials used.
11. Wear rate indicator. A tyre rated at 400, for example, will last twice as long as a tyre rated at 200.
12. The traction rating grades the performance of a tyre when stopping on a wet road surface. The higher the grade, the better the braking performance. The grades, from highest to lowest are; **AA, A, B and C**.
13. The maximum load which can be carried by the tyre.
14. Heat resistance grading. The tyres resistance to heat is grade **A, B or C**, with **A** indicating the greatest resistance to heat. This grading is provided for a correctly inflated tyre, which is being used within its speed and loading limits.
15. The maximum inflation pressure for the tyre. This pressure should not be used for normal driving. See **189, AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS**.

SPEED RATING

Rating	Speed km/h (mph)
Q	160 (99)
R	170 (106)
S	180 (112)
T	190 (118)
U	200 (124)
H	210 (130)
V	240 (149)
W	270 (168)
Y	300 (186)

TYRE CARE

-  **Do not drive the vehicle if a tyre is damaged, excessively worn, or incorrectly inflated.**
-  **Avoid contaminating the tyres with vehicle fluids, as they may cause damage to the tyre.**
-  **Avoid spinning the wheels. The forces released can damage the structure of the tyre and cause it to fail.**
-  **If wheel spin is unavoidable due to a loss of traction (in deep snow, for example), do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph).**
-  **Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the sidewall of the tyre.**
-  **Avoid damaging the TPMS sensor when removing a tyre from the wheel and fitting a tyre to the wheel.**

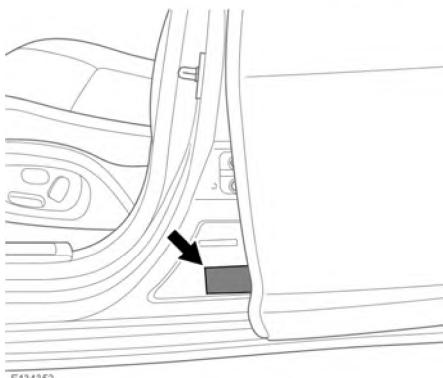
All of the vehicle's tyres (including the spare) should be checked regularly for damage, wear, and distortion. If you are in any doubt about the condition of a tyre, have it checked immediately by a tyre repair centre or a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

TYRE PRESSURES

-  **All tyre pressures, including the spare, should be checked regularly using an accurate pressure gauge, when the tyres are cold.**
-  **Pressure checks should be carried out only when the tyres are cold, and the vehicle has been stationary for more than 3 hours. A hot tyre at, or below, recommended cold inflation pressure, is dangerously under-inflated.**

Tyres

- ⚠ Never drive your vehicle if the tyre pressures are incorrect. Under-inflation causes excessive flexing and uneven tyre wear. Over-inflation causes harsh ride, uneven tyre wear, and poor handling.**
- ⚠ Do not drive the vehicle with a leaking tyre. Even if the tyre appears to be inflated, it could be dangerously under-inflated and will continue to deflate. Replace or contact an approved repairer.**
- ⚠ Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.**
- ⚠ If the vehicle has been parked in strong sunlight, or used in high ambient temperatures, do not reduce the tyre pressures. Move the vehicle into the shade and allow the tyres to cool before rechecking the pressures.**



The recommended tyre pressures are listed on a label located in the left side front door opening.

- ⚠ The loading of the vehicle should always be considered when checking and adjusting tyre pressures.**

Check the tyres, including the spare, for condition and pressure on a weekly basis and before long journeys.

If tyre pressures are checked while the vehicle is inside a protected covered area (e.g., a garage) and subsequently driven in lower outdoor temperatures, tyre under-inflation could occur.

A slight pressure loss occurs naturally with time. If this exceeds 0.14bar (2 psi, 14 kPa) per week, have the cause investigated and rectified by qualified personnel.

If it is necessary to check the tyre pressures when the tyres are warm, you should expect the pressures to have increased by up to 0.3 - 0.4 bar (4 - 6 psi, 30 - 40 kPa). Do not reduce the tyre pressures to the cold inflation pressure under these circumstances. Allow the tyres to cool fully before adjusting the pressures.

The following procedure should be used to check and adjust the tyres pressures:

Note: Make sure the tyre pressures are set for the correct vehicle speed and vehicle load.

⚠ To avoid damaging the valves, do not apply excessive force or sideways force on the gauge/inflator.

1. Remove the valve cap.
2. Firmly attach a tyre pressure gauge/inflator to the valve.
3. Read the tyre pressure from the gauge and add air, if required.
4. If air is added to the tyre, remove the gauge and re-attach it before reading the pressure. Failure to do so may result in an inaccurate reading.
5. If the tyre pressure is too high, remove the gauge and allow air out of the tyre, by pressing the centre of the valve. Refit the gauge to the valve and check the pressure.

6. Repeat the process, adding or removing air as required, until the correct tyre pressure

is reached.

7. Refit the valve cap.

XF Saloon - up to 160 km/h (100 mph)

	Up to 4 occupants		Maximum Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)	
Tyre size	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)
235/55 R17 99W	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)
245/45 R18 100W	2.1 (31, 210)	2.1 (31, 210)	2.2 (32, 220)	2.2 (32, 220)
245/45 R18 100Y	2.1 (31, 210)	2.1 (31, 210)	2.2 (32, 220)	2.2 (32, 220)
245/40 R19 98Y	2.2 (32, 220)	2.2 (32, 220)	2.4 (35, 240)	2.4 (35, 240)
255/35 R20 97Y	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)	2.5 (36, 250)	2.5 (36, 250)
255/35 ZR20 97Y	2.3 (34, 230)	-	2.3 (34, 230)	-
285/30 ZR20 99Y	-	2.3 (34, 230)	-	2.3 (34, 230)

XF Saloon - over 160 km/h (100 mph)

	Up to 4 occupants		Maximum Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)	
Tyre size	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)
235/55 R17 99W	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)
245/45 R18 100W	2.6 (38, 260)	2.6 (38, 260)	2.8 (41, 280)	2.8 (41, 280)
245/45 R18 100Y	2.6 (38, 260)	2.6 (38, 260)	2.8 (41, 280)	2.8 (41, 280)
245/40 R19 98Y	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)	2.6 (38, 260)	2.6 (38, 260)
255/35 R20 97Y	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)	2.7 (39, 270)	2.7 (39, 270)
255/35 ZR20 97Y	2.4 (35, 240)	-	2.6 (38, 260)	-
285/30 ZR20 99Y	-	2.4 (35, 240)	-	2.6 (38, 260)

Tyres

XF Saloon with Speed pack - up to 160 km/h (100 mph)				
	Up to 4 occupants		Maximum Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)	
Tyre size	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)
255/35 ZR20 97Y	2.3 (34, 230)	-	2.3 (34, 230)	-
285/30 ZR20 99Y	-	2.3 (34, 230)	-	2.3 (34, 230)

XF Saloon with Speed pack - over 160 km/h (100 mph)				
	Up to 4 occupants		Maximum Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)	
Tyre size	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)
255/35 ZR20 97Y	2.7 (39, 270)	-	2.9 (42, 290)	-
285/30 ZR20 99Y	-	2.7 (39, 270)	-	2.9 (42, 290)

XF Sportbrake - up to 160 km/h (100 mph)				
	Up to 4 occupants		Maximum Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)	
Tyre size	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)
235/55 R17 99W	2.5 (36, 250)	2.5 (36, 250)	2.5 (36, 250)	2.5 (36, 250)
245/45 R18 100W	2.3 (33, 228)	2.3 (33, 228)	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)
245/45 R18 100Y	2.3 (33, 228)	2.3 (33, 228)	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)
245/40 R19 98Y	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)	2.5 (36, 250)	2.5 (36, 250)
255/35 R20 97Y	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)	2.6 (38, 260)	2.6 (38, 260)

XF Sportbrake - over 160 km/h (100 mph)

	Up to 4 occupants		Maximum Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)	
Tyre size	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)
235/55 R17 99W	2.5 (36, 250)	2.5 (36, 250)	2.5 (36, 250)	2.5 (36, 250)
245/45 R18 100W	2.7 (39, 270)	2.7 (39, 270)	2.8 (41, 280)	2.9 (43, 290)
245/45 R18 100Y	2.7 (39, 270)	2.7 (39, 270)	2.8 (41, 280)	2.9 (43, 290)
245/40 R19 98Y	2.5 (36, 250)	2.5 (36, 250)	2.6 (38, 260)	2.8 (41, 280)
255/35 R20 97Y	2.6 (38, 260)	2.6 (38, 260)	2.6 (38, 260)	2.8 (41, 280)

XFR Saloon with Performance/Dynamic Pack and XFR-S Saloon - up to 250 km/h (155 mph)

	Up to 4 occupants		Maximum Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)	
Tyre size	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)
265/35 ZR20 99Y	2.5 (36, 250)	-	2.5 (36, 250)	-
295/30 ZR20 101Y	-	2.5 (36, 250)	-	2.5 (36, 250)

XFR Saloon with Performance/Dynamic Pack and XFR-S Saloon - over 250 km/h (155 mph)

	Up to 4 occupants		Maximum Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)	
Tyre size	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)
265/35 ZR20 99Y	2.8 (41, 280)	-	3.2 (46, 320)	-
295/30 ZR20 101Y	-	2.8 (41, 280)	-	3.2 (46, 320)

Tyres

XFR-S Sportbrake - up to 250 km/h (155 mph)

	Up to 3 occupants		Maximum Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)	
Tyre size	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)
265/35 ZR20 99Y	2.5 (36, 250)	-	2.5 (36, 250)	-
295/30 ZR20 101Y	-	2.5 (36, 250)	-	2.5 (36, 250)

XFR-S Sportbrake - over 250 km/h (155 mph)

	Up to 3 occupants		Maximum Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)	
Tyre size	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)
265/35 ZR20 99Y	2.8 (41, 280)	-	3.2 (46, 320)	-
295/30 ZR20 101Y	-	2.8 (41, 280)	-	3.2 (46, 320)

Saloon and Sportbrake - temporary-use spare tyre - maximum 80 km/h (50 mph)

Tyre size	Load/speed index	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)
135/80 R18	104M	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)
135/70 R19	105M	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)

See 201, IMPORTANT – USE OF SPARE TYRE.

TYRE VALVES

Keep the valve caps screwed down firmly to prevent water or dirt from entering the valve. Check the valves for leaks when checking the tyre pressures.

 Do not twist or bend the valves when attaching a pressure hose or gauge, as damage may result.

REPLACEMENT TYRES

 Always fit replacement tyres of the same type, and wherever possible, of the same make and tread pattern.

 The load and speed index ratings on all replacement tyres must be, at least, the same specification as the Original Equipment (OE). If in doubt, consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

 Do not rotate tyres around the vehicle.



If the use of tyres not recommended by Jaguar is unavoidable, make sure that you read and fully comply with the tyre manufacturer's instructions.



If lower speed rated specialist tyres are fitted (e.g., winter tyres), then the vehicle must be driven within the speed limitations of the tyres. Consult your Jaguar dealer for further information. In markets that require a tyre's maximum speed label to be fitted, the tyre's maximum speed label should be placed within the driver's field of vision. These can be obtained from the tyre dealer.



Make sure that the TPMS sensor is not damaged during a tyre change.

When the tread has worn down to approximately 2 mm, wear indicators start to appear at the surface of the tread pattern. This produces a continuous band of rubber across the tread, as a visual reminder.

Ideally, tyres should be replaced in sets of 4. If this is not possible, replace the tyres in pairs (both front or both rear). When tyres are replaced, the wheels should always be re-balanced and the alignment checked.

AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS

In areas of extended high ambient temperature, vehicle tyres can be affected by a softening of the tyre sidewall. If the vehicle is stationary for long periods, the effect is to slightly deform the tyre at the point where the tyre meets the standing surface. This is known as a flat spot.

This is normal tyre behaviour. However, when the vehicle is subsequently driven, vibration may be experienced from the flat spot. The condition will steadily improve with extra time and distance.

In order to minimise flat spotting while the vehicle is stationary for a long period, tyre pressures can be increased to the maximum, as stated on the tyre sidewall. Tyres must be returned to the specified running pressures before driving. See 189, AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS.

TYRE DEGRADATION

Tyres degrade over time due to the effects of ultraviolet light, extreme temperatures, high loads, and environmental conditions. It is recommended that tyres are replaced at least every 6 years, but they may require replacement more frequently.

USING WINTER TYRES

Note: M+S (mud and snow) tyres have a recognised level of winter performance and need not be replaced.

In many countries, legislation exists that requires the use of winter tyres during specified periods of the year.

Note: A dedicated winter tyre often has a lower speed rating than the original equipment tyre, and the vehicle must, therefore, be driven within the speed limitation of the tyre. Consult your Jaguar dealer for further information. In markets that require a tyre's maximum speed label to be fitted, the tyre's maximum speed label should be placed within the driver's field of vision. These can be obtained from the tyre dealer.



This symbol identifies dedicated winter tyres, which can be fitted if optimum winter traction is required, or the vehicle is to be used in more extreme winter conditions.

Winter tyres must be fitted to all 4 wheels.

For optimum traction, tyres should be run in for at least 160 kilometres (100 miles) on dry roads, prior to driving on snow or ice.

Use of dedicated winter tyres may require a change of wheel size, depending on the original choice of wheel. All 4 wheels must be changed. If fitted with standard rubber valves, the Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) warning lamp will flash for 75 seconds and then remain illuminated. The Message centre will also display **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.

When the original wheels and tyres are refitted, the vehicle will need to travel a short distance to reset the TPMS and extinguish the warning lamp.

Approved winter tyre sizes and pressures

Tyre make	Tyre size	Load index	Speed rating	Tyre pressures - bar (psi, kPa)
Dunlop Winter Sport M3	235/55 R17	99	H	2.5 (36, 250)
Pirelli Sotto Zero	245/45 R18	100	V	2.5 (36, 250)
Dunlop Winter Sport M3	245/45 R18	96/100	V	2.5 (36, 250)
Pirelli Sotto Zero	245/40 R19	98	V	2.5 (36, 250)
Dunlop Winter Sport M3	245/40 R19	98	V	2.5 (36, 250)
Pirelli Sotto Zero	255/35 R20	97	V	2.5 (36, 250)
Pirelli Sotto Zero	285/30 R20	99	V	2.5 (36, 250)
Nokian Hakkapeliitta 7 (studded tyre)	245/40 R19	98	T	2.5 (36, 250)
Nokian Hakkapeliitta 7 (studded tyre)	255/35 R20	97	T	2.5 (36, 250)

If in doubt, or for further information, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

USING SNOW CHAINS

-  **Only use traction devices in heavy snow conditions, on compacted snow.**
-  **Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) must be switched off when using traction devices.**
-  **Never exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) when traction devices are fitted.**

Never fit traction devices to a temporary-use spare wheel.

Jaguar approved traction devices may be used to improve traction in heavy snow conditions, on compacted snow.

If it becomes necessary to fit traction devices, the following points must be observed:

- Only Jaguar approved traction devices should be used on the vehicle. Only Jaguar approved traction devices have been tested to make sure that they do not cause damage to the vehicle. Contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer for information.

- The wheels and tyres fitted must conform to the specifications of the original equipment.
- Full chain traction devices can be fitted to only the rear wheels.
- Do not fit a traction device to a temporary-use spare wheel.
- Fit traction devices in pairs, on the same axle.
- Always read, understand, and follow the traction device manufacturer's instructions. Pay particular attention to the maximum speed and fitting instructions.
- Avoid tyre/vehicle damage, by removing the traction devices as soon as the conditions allow.

Note: When using snow chains, select Winter mode and switch DSC off.

TYRE DECLARATION (India only)

All imported tyres meet the requirements of Bureau of India Standards (BIS) and comply with the requirements under Central Motor Vehicle Rules (CMVR) 1989. The tyres are the same as those tyres supplied as Original Equipment (OE) for Jaguar models which are fully Type Approved for the Indian market.

Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

! TPMS provides a low pressure warning and does not re-inflate your tyres. Tyre pressures should be checked regularly, using an accurate pressure gauge when the tyres are cold.

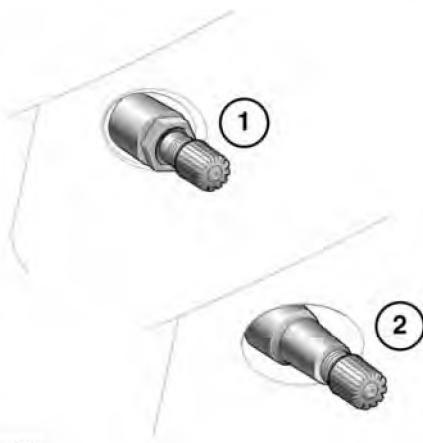
! TPMS can NOT register damage to a tyre. Regularly check the condition of your tyres.

! When inflating tyres, care should be taken to avoid bending or damaging the TPMS valves. Always make sure that the inflation head to the valve stem is correctly aligned.

Note: Non-approved accessories may interfere with the system. If this occurs, **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING FAULT** is displayed in the Message centre.

Note: Different types of tyre may affect TPMS performance. Always replace tyres in accordance with recommendations.

TPMS constantly monitors the tyre pressure in each wheel, including the full size spare. Temporary-use spare tyres (when fitted) are not monitored.



E132513

Wheels fitted with TPMS can be visually identified by the external metal lock nut and valve (1). All Jaguar non-TPMS wheels have a rubber valve fitted (2).

Tyre pressures should be checked regularly when the tyres are cold, and adjusted as necessary. The presence of TPMS does not remove the need to do this.

The tyre pressure warning lamp illuminates when 1 or more of the tyres are significantly under-inflated. See **45, TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (YELLOW)**. Stop and check the tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the recommended pressure for the vehicle's loading condition.

TPMS also monitors the full size spare tyre pressure. If the pressure for the spare tyre is incorrect, the message **CHECK SPARE TYRE PRESSURE** is displayed, accompanied by illumination of the warning lamp.

Your vehicle is also supplied with a speed based TPMS. If the vehicle is required to travel at speeds of *over 160 km/h (100 mph), the tyre pressures should be raised. See **183, TYRE PRESSURES**. Failure to do this may cause the warning message **TYRE PRESSURES LOW FOR SPEED** to be displayed in the Message centre.

Note: *over 250 km/h (155 mph) for the XFR-S.

Make sure to set the tyre pressures to the correct pressure when the vehicle will be travelling at speeds of *less than 160 km/h (100 mph).

Note: *less than 250 km/h (155 mph) for the XFR-S.

VEHICLE LOADING

When the vehicle is delivered, the tyre pressures will be set to the heavy load pressures, as shown on the tyre pressures label. See **183, TYRE PRESSURES**. These pressures are suitable for loading the vehicle up to GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight). The TPMS will also be set to heavy load to monitor these tyre pressures.

It is possible to select a TPMS normal load setting that corresponds to a set of reduced tyre pressures. This normal load setting is referred to as the Comfort setting and ride comfort will be improved providing the weight restriction for passengers and luggage is not exceeded. See **183, TYRE PRESSURES**.

The TPMS low and normal settings can be set via the Touch screen, See **63, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**.

The sequence of menus is listed below:

1. **Home**.
2. **Setup**.
3. **Security/Vehicle**.
4. **TPM load settings**.

When the ignition is switched on, a TPMS message will be displayed in the Message centre, to indicate which pressure setting is being monitored. The message will be either **TPMS HEAVY LOAD** or **TPMS NORMAL LOAD**.

Note: The TPMS setting must correspond with the current tyre pressures.

Note: Make sure that the tyre pressures are correct for the vehicle's load.

TEMPORARY USE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE

See **201, IMPORTANT – USE OF SPARE TYRE** and **198, WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY**.

If the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted, the system will automatically recognise the change in wheel positions. After approximately 10 minutes of driving above 25 km/h (16 mph), the message **FRONT[REAR] RIGHT[LEFT] TYRE PRESSURE NOT MONITORED** will be displayed, accompanied by illumination of the warning lamp.

The warning lamp will first flash and then illuminate continuously. Extended use of the temporary-use spare wheel will trigger the message **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.

This TPMS display sequence will be activated at every ignition cycle until the temporary spare wheel is replaced by a full-size road wheel with a TPMS sensor fitted.

Note: If in use, always replace the temporary spare wheel before having a TPMS fault investigated.

Tyre repair kit

TYRE REPAIR KIT

⚠ If you are in any doubt regarding your ability to carry out the instructions, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer before attempting the repair.

Your vehicle may not be equipped with a spare tyre. If this is the case, in the rear under-floor storage compartment, you will find a Tyre repair kit. The Tyre repair kit can be used to repair 1 tyre and it is essential that you read the following guide before attempting to repair a tyre.

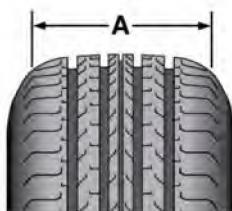
The Tyre repair kit seals most punctures with a maximum diameter of 6 mm (1/4 inch).

***Note:** The sealant used in the Tyre repair kit has a shelf life and the expiry date is shown on the tyre sealant bottle. Make sure that the container is replaced before the expiry date.*

TYRE REPAIR KIT SAFETY INFORMATION

⚠ Some tyre damage may only be partially sealed, or may not seal at all, depending on the amount and type of damage. Any loss of tyre pressure can seriously affect vehicle safety.

⚠ Do not use the Tyre repair kit if the tyre has been damaged by driving while under-inflated.



E149063
A - Tyre tread area.

- ⚠ Only use the Tyre repair kit to seal damage located within the tyre tread area.**
- ⚠ Do not use the Tyre repair kit to seal damage to the tyre sidewall.**
- ⚠ Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) when a repaired tyre is fitted to the vehicle.**
- ⚠ The maximum distance that should be driven when a repaired tyre is fitted, is 200 km (125 miles).**
- ⚠ When a repaired tyre is fitted, drive with caution and avoid sudden braking or steering manoeuvres.**
- ⚠ Only use the Tyre repair kit for the vehicle with which it was supplied.**
- ⚠ Do not use the Tyre repair kit for any other purpose than tyre repair.**
- ⚠ Never leave the Tyre repair kit unattended, when in use.**
- ⚠ Only use the Tyre repair kit within the -30°C to +70°C temperature range.**
- ⚠ Always keep children and animals at a safe distance from the Tyre repair kit, when in use.**
- ⚠ Do not stand directly beside the compressor when it is operating.**
- ⚠ Check the tyre sidewall prior to inflation. If any cracks, damage, or deformities are apparent, do not inflate the tyre.**
- ⚠ Watch the tyre sidewall during inflation. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage, or deformities appear, switch off the compressor and deflate the tyre. Do not continue to use the tyre.**

USING THE TYRE REPAIR KIT

⚠ Avoid skin contact with the sealant which contains natural rubber latex.

- ⚠ Before attempting a tyre repair, make sure the vehicle is parked safely, as far away from passing traffic as possible.
- ⚠ Make sure that the Parking brake is applied and transmission **P** is engaged.
- ⚠ Do not attempt to remove foreign objects, such as nails, screws, etc. from the tyre.
- ⚠ Always run the engine when using the compressor, unless the vehicle is in an enclosed or poorly ventilated space, as this may cause asphyxiation.
- ⚠ To prevent overheating, do not operate the compressor continuously for longer than 10 minutes.

Note: All vehicle drivers and occupants should be made aware that a temporary repair has been made to a tyre fitted to the vehicle. They should also be made aware of the special driving conditions imposed when using a repaired tyre.

REPAIR PROCEDURE

⚠ Check the tyre sidewall prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps, or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tyre. Do not stand directly beside the tyre while the compressor is pumping. Watch the tyre sidewall. If any cracks, bumps, or similar damage appear, turn off the compressor and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue to use the tyre.

⚠ If the tyre inflation pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi, 180 kPa) within 7 minutes, the tyre may have suffered excessive damage. A temporary repair will not be possible and the vehicle should not be driven until the tyre has been replaced.

1. Open the Tyre repair kit and peel off the maximum speed label. Attach the label to the facia, in the driver's field of vision. Take care not to obstruct any of the instruments or warning lamps.
2. Uncoil the compressor power cable and the inflation hose.
3. Unscrew the orange cap from the sealant bottle receiver and the sealant bottle cap.
4. Screw the sealant bottle into the receiver (clockwise) until tight.

Note: Screwing the bottle onto the receiver will pierce the bottle's seal. Once the receiver has been fitted, a ratchet prevents it from being removed.

5. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
6. Remove the protective cap from the inflation hose and connect the inflation hose to the tyre valve. Make sure that the hose is screwed on firmly.
7. Make sure that the compressor switch is in the Off (**0**) position. Insert the power cable connector into an auxiliary power socket. See **70, STORAGE COMPARTMENTS**. Unless the vehicle is in an enclosed area, start the engine.
8. Switch on the compressor switch to the (**I**) position.
9. Inflate the tyre to a minimum of 1.8 bar (26 psi, 180 kPa) and a maximum of 3.5 bar (51 psi, 350 kPa).

Note: When pumping the sealant through the tyre valve, the pressure may rise up to 6 bar (87 psi, 600 kPa). The pressure will drop again after approximately 30 seconds.

10. During the inflation, switch the compressor off briefly to check the tyre pressure, using the gauge mounted on the compressor.

Tyre repair kit

Note: It should not take longer than 10 minutes to inflate the tyre. If, after 10 minutes, the tyre has not yet reached the minimum pressure, the tyre should not be used.

11. Once the tyre has been inflated to the required pressure, switch off the compressor. If desired, the engine may be turned off after the compressor has been turned off.
12. Remove the power connector from the auxiliary power socket.
13. Remove the inflation hose from the tyre valve, by unscrewing it as quickly as possible (counter-clockwise).
14. Replace the inflation hose protective cap and the tyre valve cap.
15. Make sure that the Tyre repair kit (including the bottle and receiver caps) is placed securely in the vehicle. You will need to use the kit to check the tyre pressure after approximately 3 km (2 miles), so make sure they are easily accessible.
16. Immediately drive the vehicle for approximately 3 km (2 miles), to allow the sealant to coat the inner surface of the tyre and form a seal at the puncture.

CHECKING THE TYRE PRESSURE AFTER A REPAIR

⚠ When driving the vehicle, if you experience vibrations, abnormal steering, or noises, reduce speed immediately. Drive with extreme caution at reduced speed, to the first safe place to stop the vehicle. Visually examine the tyre and check its pressure. If there are any signs of damage or deformity to the tyre, or the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar (19 psi, 130 kPa), do not continue driving.



Consult a tyre repair centre or a Dealer/Authorised Repairer, for advice concerning the replacement of a tyre after using a tyre repair kit.

1. Drive the vehicle for 3 km (2 miles), then stop in a safe place. Carry out a visual examination of the tyre's condition.
2. Make sure that the sealant container is in its original position.
3. Screw the inflation hose connector firmly onto the tyre valve.
4. Read the tyre pressure from the gauge.
5. If the pressure of the sealant filled tyre is above 1.3 bar (19 psi, 130 kPa), adjust the pressure to the correct value. If there are signs of damage or deformity to the tyre, or the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar, do not continue driving.
6. Make sure that the compressor switch is in the Off (0) position and insert the power cable connector into the auxiliary power socket. If the vehicle is in a well ventilated area, start the engine.
7. Switch the compressor to On (I) and inflate the tyre to the correct pressure. See **183, TYRE PRESSURES**.
8. To check the tyre pressure, turn off the compressor and then read the pressure from the gauge.
9. When the compressor is off, if the tyre pressure is too high, release the required amount of pressure using the pressure release valve.
10. Once the tyre is inflated to the correct pressure, switch off the compressor and remove the power plug from the auxiliary socket.

Note: The use of the Tyre repair kit sealant may lead to error prompts and incorrect readings of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS). Therefore, use the Tyre repair kit pressure gauge to check and adjust the damaged tyre's inflation pressure.

11. Unscrew the inflation hose connector from the tyre valve, replace the tyre valve cap and the inflation hose connector protective cap.
12. Make sure that the Tyre repair kit is stowed securely in the vehicle.
13. Drive to the nearest tyre repair centre or Dealer/Authorised Repairer, for a replacement tyre to be fitted. Make sure that you make the repair centre aware that the Tyre repair kit has been used before the tyre is removed.
14. The tyre inflation hose, the receiver, and the sealant bottle must be replaced once a new tyre has been fitted.



Only sealant bottles which are completely empty should be disposed of with normal household waste. Sealant bottles which contain some sealant, and the tyre inflation hose, should be disposed of by a tyre specialist or your Dealer/Authorised Repairer, in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

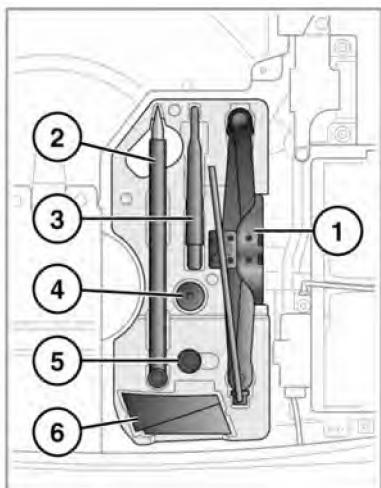
Wheel changing

WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY

Before raising the vehicle, or changing a wheel, make sure that you read and comply with the following warnings:

-  **Always find a safe place to stop, off the highway, and away from traffic.**
-  **Switch on the hazard warning lamps.**
-  **Apply the Parking brake and engage transmission P.**
-  **Make sure that the vehicle and jack are both on firm, level ground.**
-  **Make sure that the front wheels are in the straight ahead position and engage the steering lock.**
-  **Disconnect any trailer/caravan from the vehicle.**
-  **Make sure that all passengers, and animals, are out of the vehicle and in a safe place away from the highway.**
-  **Place a warning triangle at a suitable distance behind the vehicle, facing towards oncoming traffic.**
-  **Remove the spare wheel prior to jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilising the vehicle when raised.**
-  **When one rear wheel is lifted off the ground, transmission P position will not prevent the vehicle from moving and possibly slipping off the jack as the Parking brake only operates on the rear wheels.**
-  **Always chock the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed, using the wheel chock supplied in the tool kit. Chock the front of a front wheel, or the rear of a rear wheel.**
-  **If jacking the vehicle on a slight slope is unavoidable, place chocks on the downhill side of the two opposite wheels. An additional chock will be needed.**
-  **Never place anything between the jack and the ground, or the jack and the vehicle.**
-  **Do not attempt to raise the vehicle, unless the jack head is fully engaged in the jacking point. Only jack the vehicle using the approved jacking points.**
-  **Always position the jack from the side of the vehicle, in line with the appropriate jacking point.**
-  **WARNING - THAT NO PERSON SHOULD PLACE ANY PORTION OF THEIR BODY UNDER A VEHICLE THAT IS SUPPORTED BY A JACK.**
-  **Take care when loosening the wheel nuts. The wheel brace may slip off if not properly attached and the wheel nuts may release suddenly. Either unexpected movement may cause an injury.**
-  **Take care when lifting the spare wheel and removing the punctured wheel. The wheels are heavy and can cause injuries if not handled correctly.**
-  **Always make sure that replacement tyres have the correct rating and specifications (e.g., load index, size, speed rating) for your vehicle.**
-  **Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported only by a jack.**
-  **After use, the tool kit should be returned to the storage area and correctly stowed.**

WHEEL CHANGING



E152074

1. Jack assembly. Observe the instructions printed on the jack.
2. Wheel brace.
3. Towing eye.
4. Retaining nut.
5. Locking wheel nut adaptor.
6. Wheel chock.
7. There are 4 jacking points on the underside of the floor. 2 indented, triangular indicators are provided on each sill cover. These indicate the location for the jack.

⚠ Remove the spare wheel prior to jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilising the vehicle when raised.

See 201, **IMPORTANT – USE OF SPARE TYRE** and 200, **REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL**.



Before raising the vehicle or changing a wheel, make sure that you read and comply with the following warnings:

⚠ Do not attempt to raise the vehicle, unless the jack head is fully engaged in the jacking point. Only jack the vehicle using the approved jacking points.

⚠ The jack is designed for wheel changing only. Never work beneath the vehicle with the jack as the only means of support. Always use correctly rated vehicle support stands, before putting any part of your body beneath the vehicle.

⚠ Always use the complete jacking lever assembly throughout the tyre changing process, to minimise any chance of accidental injury.

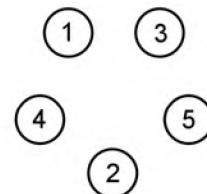
Wheel changing

Only jack the vehicle using the jacking points described, or damage to the vehicle could occur.

Before raising the vehicle, use the wheel nut brace to slacken the wheel nuts of the wheel to be replaced, by half a turn counter-clockwise. Use the wheel chock. See **201, USING WHEEL CHOCKS**.

1. Position the jack under the relevant jacking point, under the floor.

Note: Do not allow the jack to contact the sill at any other point, as damage may result.
2. Turn the jack lever clockwise to raise until the jack pin locates into the jacking point. Make sure that the base of the jack is in full contact with the road surface.
3. Raise the vehicle using the jack with a slow steady operation. Avoid rapid, jerky actions as they may cause the vehicle/jack to become unstable.
4. Stop when the tyre is just clear of the ground.
5. Remove the wheel nuts and place them together where they cannot roll away.
6. Remove the wheel and place to one side. Do not lay the wheel on its face, as this may damage the finish.
7. Fit the temporary spare wheel to the hub.
8. Re-fit the wheel nuts and lightly tighten them. Make sure that the wheel is making contact with the hub evenly.
9. Make sure that the space under the vehicle is clear of obstructions, then lower the vehicle slowly and smoothly.
10. With all wheels on the ground and the jack removed, fully tighten the wheel nuts. The wheel nuts must be tightened in sequence (see illustration) to the correct torque of 125 Nm (92 lb.ft).



E132675

Note: If it is not possible to torque the wheel nuts when a wheel is replaced, they should be set to the correct torque as soon as possible.

If an alloy spare wheel is to be fitted, using a suitable blunt tool, knock the centre cap out of the removed wheel. Using hand pressure only, press the centre cap into the newly fitted spare. Check and adjust the tyre pressure as soon as possible. See **183, TYRE PRESSURES**.

Note: Examine the jack occasionally, clean and grease the moving parts, particularly the screw thread, to prevent corrosion.

REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL

⚠ Remove the spare wheel prior to jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilising the vehicle when raised.

⚠ Wheels are heavy and if handled incorrectly may cause injury. Use extreme caution when lifting, lowering, and manoeuvring the wheels.

⚠ Always secure the spare wheel, or the removed wheel, in the correct position, using the retaining bolt.

⚠ Do not stow the wheel while the vehicle is raised on the jack.

 After wheel changing, always secure the tools, chock, jack, and the replaced wheel in their correct stowage positions. Such objects, if not properly stowed, can become flying missiles in a crash or rollover, potentially causing injury or death.

Always remove the spare wheel before jacking the vehicle.

Note: Before removing the spare wheel, take note of its stowage position. The wheel to be changed must be correctly stowed and secured in its place.

USING WHEEL CHOCKS

 Before raising the vehicle, the wheel diagonally opposite the one to be removed must be chocked.

 Always chock the wheels using suitable wheel chocks. Chock the front of a front wheel, or the rear of a rear wheel.

 If jacking the vehicle on a slope is unavoidable, place the chocks on the downhill side of both wheels on the axle not being raised.

A wheel chock is stowed in the tool kit.

LOCKING WHEEL NUTS

Note: A code number is stamped on the side of the locking nut. Make sure the number is recorded in the Service book, which is supplied in the vehicle's literature pack. Quote this number if a replacement is required.

IMPORTANT – USE OF SPARE TYRE

 Adhere to the instructions on the temporary-use spare warning label, affixed to the wheel. Failure to do so may cause vehicle instability and/or tyre failure.

 Where fitted, the temporary-use spare wheel is FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY.

 Drive with caution while the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted.

 Make sure that an original size wheel and tyre are fitted as soon as possible.

 Do not fit more than one temporary-use spare wheel at any one time.

 Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) while the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted.

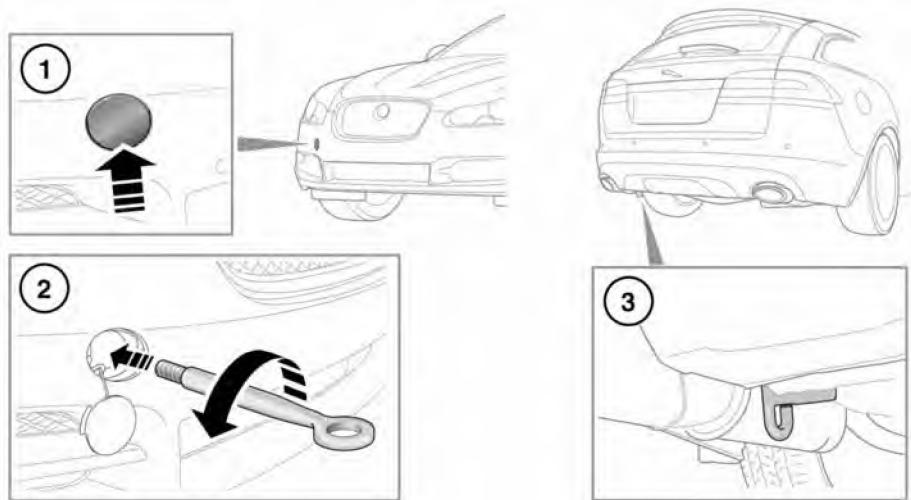
 The tyre pressure in the temporary-use spare wheel should be 4.2 Bar (60 psi/420 kPa).

 Dynamic stability control must be switched on while the temporary-use spare wheel is in use.

 Traction devices such, as snow chains, cannot be used with a temporary-use spare wheel.

Vehicle recovery

TOWING EYES



E143964

- ⚠ The towing eyes at the front and rear of the vehicle are designed for on-road recovery only.**
- ⚠ Do not tow the vehicle on all four wheels.**

ATTACHING THE FRONT TOWING EYE

The front towing eye is included in the tool kit, located in the under-floor area of the Luggage compartment.

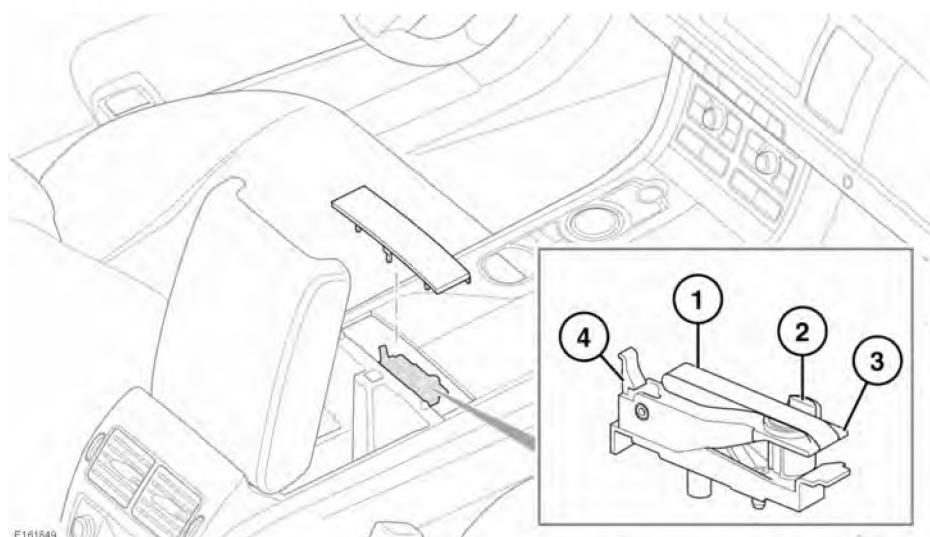
1. Pop out the cover in the front bumper.
2. Locate the towing eye through the bumper and screw the towing eye counter-clockwise into its fixing, until secure.
3. Rear towing eye.

TRANSMISSION PARK RELEASE



Make sure that the vehicle is secured with wheel chocks, apply the Electric parking brake, or firmly press the brake pedal. Failure to do so can result in unexpected movement of the vehicle causing serious injury or death.

When recovering your vehicle, it may be necessary to manually release the transmission from the Park (P) position to the Neutral (N) position. The Transmission park release is operated by a lever, located under the centre console between the drinks holder and the cubby box.



Lift up the cubby box lid and locate the trim panel just ahead of the cubby box. Prise up the panel and remove it.

To operate the Transmission park release:

1. Lift up the strap.
2. Rotate the locking device 90° counter-clockwise.
3. Pull up the operating lever with the strap, up to the vertical position.
4. The locking latch will retain the operating lever in this position.

The transmission is now in the Neutral position.

5. To re-engage the transmission park lock, hold the strap up.
6. Push the locking latch 4 outwards and return the operating lever 3 to the horizontal position. Rotate the locking device 2 90° clockwise.

Reinstall the trim panel and close the cubby box.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



Only use the lashing points indicated, or over-wheel lashings or wheel chocks. Use of any other lashing position may cause damage to the vehicle.

Vehicle recovery

! During vehicle recovery, to make sure that the steering column remains unlocked, make sure the Smart key remains in the vehicle, transmission **N** is selected and the ignition is on.

Note: *Do not attach or apply any loads to the rear spoiler (for example, bicycle carrier, luggage rack, signs, towing equipment, etc.).*

The recommended method for recovery/transportation of the vehicle, is on a transporter or trailer designed for that purpose.

Make sure that transportation is carried out by suitably qualified persons and that the vehicle is secured correctly.

BEFORE STARTING OR DRIVING



If the vehicle is involved in a collision, it should be checked by a Dealer/Authorised repairer, or suitably qualified personnel, before starting or driving.

PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION SYSTEM

The bumper includes sensors that detect a collision with a pedestrian and includes energy absorbing foam and plastics in its construction, to reduce leg injuries.

During a pedestrian collision, the sensors initiate a bonnet deployment system that releases the bonnet hinge system and raises the rear edge of the bonnet by approximately 130 mm (5.1 inches).

This increases the gap between the bonnet and the components within the engine compartment, to create a cushion to mitigate injury caused to the pedestrian.

The bonnet deployment system is active only when the ignition is on and the vehicle is driven between the speeds of approximately 25 km/h (15.5 mph) and 50 km/h (31 mph).

AFTER DEPLOYMENT OF THE PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION SYSTEM



Do not attempt to open the bonnet if the Pedestrian protection system has been deployed.

The vehicle must be stopped as soon as it is safe to do so.

The hazard warning lamps will be activated and can only be switched off by pressing the engine **START/STOP** button, to turn the engine off and on again.

A warning message **CHECK PEDESTRIAN SYSTEM** will appear in the Message centre and the vehicle should be transported to the nearest Dealer/Authorised Repairer. The vehicle must not be driven when the bonnet has been deployed.

*Note: If the warning message **CHECK PEDESTRIAN SYSTEM** appears in the Message centre when the bonnet has not been deployed, the vehicle should be taken to the nearest Dealer/Authorised Repairer immediately. It can be driven.*

If any significant damage occurs to the front bumper it should be inspected by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

SERVICE DATA RECORDING

Service data recorders in the vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about the vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering, or brakes.

In order to properly diagnose and service the vehicle, a Dealer/Authorised Repairer may access the vehicle's diagnostic information, through a direct connection to the vehicle.

EVENT DATA RECORDING

Please be advised that this vehicle incorporates an Event Data Recorder (EDR). An EDR stores driving information at the moment of an accident (driving speed, application of brake pedal and accelerator control etc.), and enables confirmation of the information stored. EDR information helps to understand the circumstances of an accident more clearly. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;

After a collision

- Whether or not the driver and passenger seat belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was travelling.

Note: *EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Other parties may seek to access the information independently of **Jaguar Land Rover Limited**.

LABEL LOCATIONS

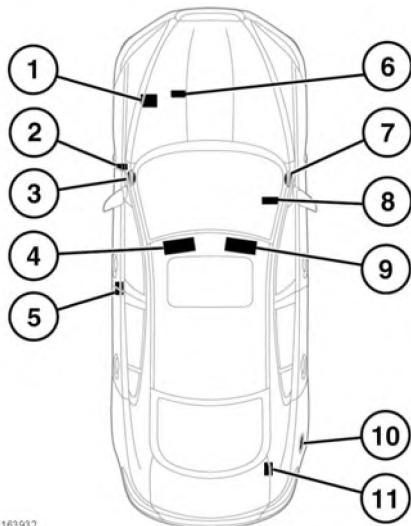


Warning labels attached to your vehicle bearing this symbol mean:
Do not touch or adjust components until you have read the relevant instructions in the handbook.



Labels showing this symbol indicate that the ignition system utilises very high voltages. Do not touch any ignition components while the ignition is turned on.

Additional information labels may also be found at these locations.



E163932

1. Left side front suspension tower - Air conditioning label.
2. Vehicle Identification plate, including the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) and recommended maximum vehicle weights.

Note: The VIN number is also stamped on a plate, visible through the bottom left side of the windscreen.

3. End of the facia - Passenger airbag label.
4. Sun visor - Airbag label.
5. Base of the left B pillar - Tyre pressure label, Airbag warning label.
6. Engine number: 2.0L petrol, stamped into the engine mounting flange. All other engines, located on the front of the right side cam cover.
7. End of the facia - Passenger airbag label
8. Vehicle identification number (VIN). Stamped onto floor pan.
9. Sun visor - Airbag label.
10. Inner-face of fuel filler flap - Fuel specification label.
11. Top face of the battery - Battery warning symbols.

It is important that you are familiar with these subjects to make sure that your vehicle and its features are used safely. Using the index at the back of this handbook, refer to the relevant topic for more information.

TRANSMISSION NUMBER

The transmission number is located on a label attached to the transmission casing.

VEHICLE BUILD DATE PLATE

The vehicle built date is shown on the VIN plate.

Technical specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

Data	2.2L Diesel	3.0L Diesel	2.0L Petrol	3.0L Petrol (SC)	5.0L Petrol (SC)
Number of cylinders	4	6	4	6	8
Displacement (cc)	2179	2993	1999	2995	5000
Compression ratio	15.8:1	16.1:1	10:1	10.5:1	9.5:1
EEC power rating PS at rpm	163/200 at 3500	240/275 at 4000	240 at 5500	340 at 6500	470/510/550 at 6000-6500
EEC peak torque Nm at rpm	400 at 2000 and 450 at 2000	500 at 2000 and 600 at 2000	340 at 2000-4000	450 at 3500-5000	575 at 2000-5500 and 625 at 2500-5500

SC - Supercharged.

LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS

Part	Variant	Specification
Engine oil	2.0L petrol	SAE 5W-30 engine oil meeting specification WSS M2C913-C.
	3.0L petrol SC	SAE 0W-20 engine oil meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.51.5122.
	5.0L petrol SC	SAE 0W-20 engine oil meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.51.5122.
	Diesel with Diesel particulate filter	SAE 5W-30 engine oil meeting specification WSS M2C934-B. If unavailable 5W-30 engine oil, meeting specification ACEA C2 may be used.
	Diesel without Diesel particulate filter	SAE 5W-30 engine oil meeting specification WSS M2C913-C. If unavailable 5W-30 engine oil, meeting specification ACEA A5/B5 may be used.
Power steering fluid	All vehicles	Jaguar Land Rover Limited recommends Mobil ATF320 PAS fluid.
Brake fluid	All vehicles	Use Jaguar brake fluid. If unavailable for topping up, a Low Viscosity, DOT4 brake fluid that meets the requirements of ISO 4925 class 6 may be used.
Washer fluid	All vehicles	Screen wash with frost protection, diluted with clean water, as specified on the bottle.
Engine coolant fluid	All vehicles	50% mixture of water and antifreeze specification WSS M97B44 (coloured orange) Extended Life Coolant.
Air conditioning refrigerant	All vehicles	R-134a
If in doubt about the required specification of a lubricant or fluid for your vehicle, seek advice from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.		

Technical specifications

WEIGHTS

Variant	Vehicle weight from kg (lbs)	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) ¹ kg (lbs)	Maximum front axle load ² kg (lbs)	Maximum rear axle load ² kg (lbs)
Saloon				
2.2L diesel	1735.0 (3825)	2320.0 (5115)	1200.0 (2646)	1250.0 (2756)
3.0L diesel	1770.0 (3902)	2360.0 (5203)	1215.0 (2679)	1250.0 (2756)
2.0L petrol	1660.0 (3660)	2230.0 (4916)	1080.0 (2381)	1220.0 (2690)
3.0L petrol (SC)	1770.0 (3902)	2315.0 (5104)	1150.0 (2535)	1220.0 (2690)
3.0L petrol (SC) AWD	1880.0 (4145)	2415.0 (5324)	1215.0 (2679)	1255.0 (2767)
5.0L petrol (SC)	1870.0 (4123)	2400.0 (5291)	1185.0 (2612)	1260.0 (2778)
Sportbrake				
2.2L Eco diesel	1775.0 (3913)	2320.0 (5115)	1170.0 (2579)	1280.0 (2822)
2.2L diesel	1824.0 (4021)	2390.0 (5269)	1170.0 (2579)	1320.0 (2910)
3.0L diesel	1880.0 (4145)	2440.0 (5379)	1200.0 (2646)	1320.0 (2910)
5.0L petrol (SC)	1967.0 (4336)	2450.0 (5401)	1200.0 (2646)	1320.0 (2910)

¹The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle including passengers and load.

² The front and rear axle maximum loads cannot be reached simultaneously as this will exceed the GVW limit.

SC - Supercharged, **AWD** - All Wheel Drive.

For further information on the technical specifications, see the Jaguar website www.jaguar.com.

⚠ The maximum permitted roof load, including the weight of the roof rack/roof bars, is 75 kg (165 lb). The roof load must be included when calculating the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW).

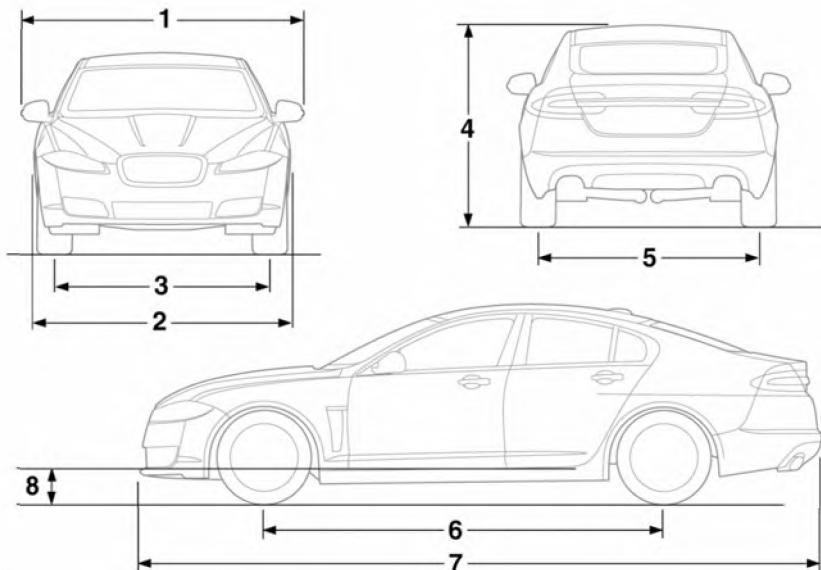


Jaguar recommend that only approved accessories are used. If in any doubt, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer before fitting a roof rack/roof bars or carrying a roof load.

For towing weights, see 77, **TOWING WEIGHTS**.

DIMENSIONS

Saloon



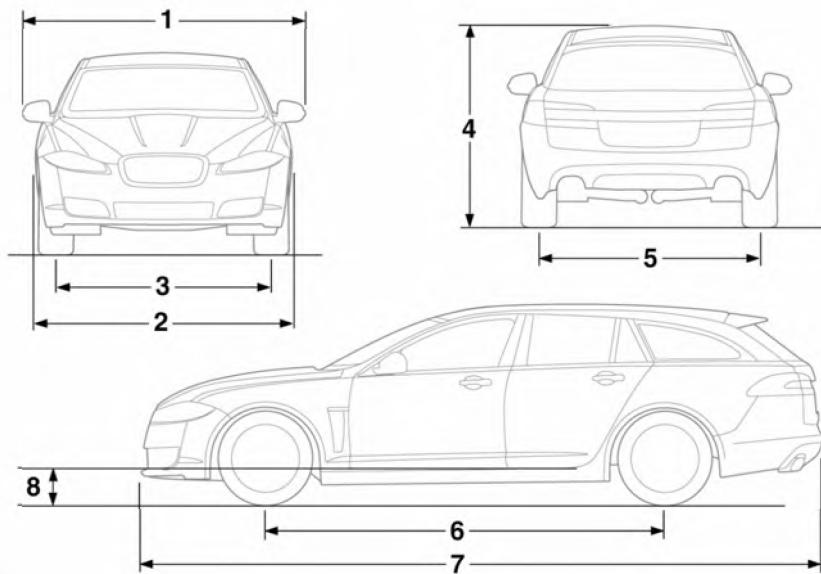
E161850

Item	Description	mm (inches)
1	Width	2077.0 (81.8)
2	Width with mirrors folded	1939.0 (76.3)
3	Track - front	1559.0 (61.4)
4	Height (with antenna)	1460.0 (57.5) (1468 (57.8))
5	Track - rear	1605.0 (63.2)
6	Wheelbase	2909.0 (114.5)
7	Length - XF, XFS, (XFR and XFR-S)	4966.0 (195.5), 4961.0 (195.3), (4981.0 (196.1))
8	*Maximum wading depth	150 (6)
-	Turning circle kerb to kerb (AWD)	11.5 m (37.73 ft), (11.84 m (38.85 ft))

*Maximum wading speed is 7 km/h (4 mph).

Technical specifications

Sportbrake



E161851

Item	Description	mm (inches)
1	Width	2077.0 (81.8)
2	Width with mirrors folded	1939.0 (76.3)
3	Track - front	1559.0 (61.4)
4	Height (with antenna)	1480.0 (58.3) (1511.0 (59.5))
5	Track - rear	1605.0 (63.2)
6	Wheelbase	2909.0 (114.5)
7	Length - XF, XFS	4966.0 (195.5), 4961.0 (195.3)
8	*Maximum wading depth	150 (6)
-	Turning circle kerb to kerb	11.5 m (37.73 ft)

*Maximum wading speed is 7 km/h (4 mph).

CAPACITIES

Item	Variant	Capacity
Fuel tank (usable)	3.0L diesel and all Sportbrake models	68.1 litres (15 gallons)
	All other saloon models	64.0 (14.1 gallons)
Fuel tank reserve (when the fuel gauge indicates empty)	All	5.5 litres (1.2 gallons)
Engine oil refill and filter change	2.2L diesel	5.86 litres (10.3 pints)
	3.0L diesel	6.6 litres (11.6 pints)
	2.0L petrol	5.4 litres (9.5 pints)
	3.0L petrol (SC)	7.25 litres (12.8 pints)
	5.0L petrol (SC)	7.25 litres (12.8 pints)
Washer reservoir	With headlamp wash	5.5 litres (9.7 pints)
	Without headlamp wash	4.4 litres (7.7 pints)
Engine cooling system (fill from dry)	2.2L diesel	11.56 litres (20.3 pints)
	3.0L diesel	12.3 litres (21.6 pints)
	2.0L petrol	8.1 litres (14.2 pints)
	3.0L petrol (SC)	13.5 litres (23.7 pints)
	5.0L petrol (SC)	13.2 litres (23.2 pints)
Engine cooling system (service fill)	2.2L diesel	8.2 litres (14.4 pints)
	3.0L diesel	9.0 litres (15.8 pints)
	2.0L petrol	6.2 litres (11.0 pints)
	3.0L petrol (SC)	9.0 litres (15.8 pints)
	5.0L petrol (SC) - both drain points used	9.0 litres (15.8 pints)

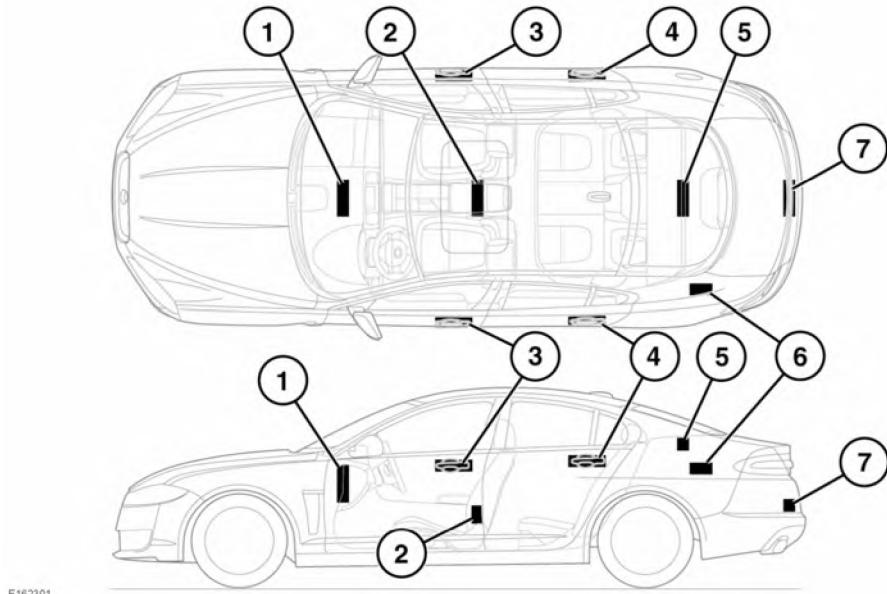
The quoted capacities are approximate and provided as a guide only. All levels must be checked using the level marks, or information displayed in the Message centre, as applicable.

Technical specifications

WHEEL ALIGNMENT DATA

Wheel alignment - front	+ 0.22°
Wheel alignment - rear	+0.17°
Camber - front LH	-0.20°
Camber - front RH	-0.40°
Camber - rear	-0.78°
Castor - front	6.61°
Castor - rear	Non-adjustable

SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS



1. Cabin front transmitter.
2. Cabin rear transmitter.
3. Front exterior door handle transmitters.
4. Rear exterior door handle transmitters.
5. Luggage compartment interior transmitter.
6. Luggage compartment exterior transmitter.
7. Keyless vehicle module.

⚠ Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should make sure that the device is kept at a distance of at least 22 cm (8.7 inches) away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device.

Technical specifications

RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATION STATEMENTS

The fitment of transmitters that utilise the following frequency bands and powers is permitted within this vehicle in line with ECE Regulation 10.04.

Service	Frequency Band	Max. Output	Antenna Position	Specific Conditions
4m VHF	70 - 85 MHz	30 W/CW 40 W/AM	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness, and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
2m VHF	142 - 175 MHz	30 W/CW 40 W/AM	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness, and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
TETRA	380 - 422 MHz	10 W/CW 10 W/PM	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness, and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
UHF	450 - 470 MHz	10 W/CW	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness, and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
Bluetooth	2400 - 2483.5 MHz	10 mW	Anywhere on the vehicle.	Transmitter, harness, and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
Road Telematics	5795 - 5815 MHz	2 W eirp	Anywhere close to a glazed area that does not contain antennas or conductive glass.	Transmitter, harness, and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
Road Telematics	63 - 64 GHz	2 W eirp	Anywhere close to a glazed area that does not contain antennas or conductive glass.	Transmitter, harness, and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.

South Korea only

Omnidirectional transmission or point-to-multipoint transmission is prohibited according to the law.

Type approval

EC-Declaration of Conformity

Valley Raytheon Systems, Inc.

EU: Lahmstraße 12, 74321 Bietigheim-Bissingen, Germany

USA: 150 Stephenson Highway, Troy, MI 48063 USA

Manufacturer

Valley Raytheon

Declares that the product

Model:

mixed

Intended use:

Blind Spot Detection

complies with the essential requirements of Article 3 of the R&TTE 1999/5/EC Directive, if used for its intended use and that the following standards have been applied.

1. Health (Article 3.1 of the R&TTE Directive)

Applied Standard: EN 50395

Issue #

2002

2. Safety (Article 3.1 of the R&TTE Directive)

Applied Standard: EN 60950-1

Issue #

2006

3. Electromagnetic Compatibility (Article 3.1.b of the R&TTE-Directive)

Applied Standard: ETSI EN 301 489-1

Issue #

V1.6.1

ETSI EN 301 489-3

Issue #

V1.4.1

4. Efficient Use of the radio frequency spectrum (3.2 of the R&TTE-Directive)

Applied Standard: ETSI EN 300 440-1

Issue #

V1.3.1

ETSI EN 300 440-2

Issue #

V1.1.2

10/10/2007

Eric Amiot

(Please read the following statement)

A

About this handbook	2
Accessories	153
Active differential control	88
Adaptive cruise control	96
ACC gap change	97
automatic switch-off	98
driving hints	98
follow mode	96
forward alert	100
intelligent emergency braking	101
low speed switch-off	98
malfunction	99
radar detection beam issues	99
resume follow mode	98
resume set speed	98
set speed and follow mode override	97
warning lamp	45
Adaptive dynamics	89
Adaptive front lighting system	48
warning lamp	45
Adaptive headlamps	48
After a collision	
pedestrian protection system	205
Age degradation (tyres)	189
Airbags	
active head restraints	37
cover cleaning	161
curtain	38
deployment	38–39
disability modifications	40
front	38
locations	37
maintenance	153
service information	40
side	38
warning lamp	39, 45
Air conditioning	
automatic recirculation	68
driver controls	
front	67
Air quality sensor	68
Alarm	14, 153
automatic relocking and arming	15
battery backed sounder	15
deactivating	15
passive arming	15
perimeter	15
security sensor fault	15
tilt sensor	15
Anchor points (ISOFIX)	34
Anchor points (luggage)	73
Anti-lock braking system	
emergency stop signal	91
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) warning lamp	44
Anti-theft system	153
Anti-trap protection	
sunroof	62
windows	62
Approach lamps	48
Arduous driving conditions	155
Audio	
automatic station retune	109
CD loading	103
changing portable media device	118
connecting portable media devices	115
DAB radio	
controls	110
settings	111
stations	112
DVD player controls	121
full screen view	122
licensing	104, 106
portable media connections	115
portable media controls	113
portable media pairing	117
portable media playing	116
radio controls	108
sound settings	103
touch screen controls	102
TV controls	119
video player controls	121
Auto lamps	
wiper detection	48
Automatic locking	7, 15
Automatic recirculation	68

Index

Automatic speed limiter	
warning lamp	45
Automatic switch off of ACC	98
Automatic transmission	84
gear selector	85
shift paddles	85
temporary manual selection	85
Auto zoom (navigation)	135
Auxiliary device connection	117
B	
Battery	
boost starting	173
care	171
charging	174
connecting jump leads	172
disconnecting jump leads	173
maintenance	171
monitoring system	172
replacing	174
using a starting aid	173
warning symbols	171
Battery backed sounder	15
Battery monitoring system	172
Blinds	
rear window	61
sunroof	61
Blind spot monitor	
displayed messages	57
notification of overtaking vehicle	56
sensor blockage	57
Bluetooth	
compatibility	127
pairing	
via the phone	127
portable media	
pairing	117
playing	116
telephone	126
icons	128
overview	126
pairing	128
phonebook	129
safety	127
Bonnet	
closing	156
opening	155
Booster seats for larger children	34
Boost starting	173
Brakes	
ABS warning lamp	44
electronic brake force distribution	90
emergency assist	100
emergency brake assist	90
emergency stop signal	91
fluid check	168
fluid specification	168
fluid top up	168
handbrake	90
important information	90
warning lamp (red)	43
Bulbs	
lamp failure	156
licence plate	156
number plate	156
C	
Call volume	129
Cameras	
rear camera	93
Capacities	213
engine oil	213
fuel tank	213
washer reservoir	213
Carpets and mats	161
Car-wash	159
CD player	
CD loading	103
portable media pairing	117
portable media playing	116
Change a connected phone	128
Changing a fuse	175
Changing a wheel	
locking wheel nuts	201
recommended process	199
safety warnings	198
spare wheel	200
temporary spare wheel	201

Charging the vehicle battery	174
Chassis number	207
Child safety	
booster seats	34
check list	32
child seats	31
ISOFIX anchor points	34
larger children on booster seats	34
lock and window inhibitor	31
positioning	33
recommended child seats	34
tether straps	35
Cleaning	
airbag covers	161
alloy wheels	159
automatic car wash	159
carpets and mats	161
engine compartment	159
exterior	159
paintwork	159
glass	159
interior	160–161
leather	160
park assist sensors	159
parking aids sensors	159
polishing	160
rear screen	160
removing grease	160
removing stains	161
removing tar	160
seat belts	161
sensors and cameras	159
sunroof	160
using a car-wash	159
washer jets	156
Climate control	
automatic recirculation	68
driver controls	
front	67
heated and cooled seats	69
heated seats	69
Climate seats	69
Closing the bonnet	156
Cold weather driving	
diesel particulate filter (DPF)	154
Compact disc	103
Condensation (headlamps)	49
Conformity declarations	145, 218
Connecting jump leads	172
Controls	
driving position	
overview	6
Convenience mode	6
Coolant	
checking the level	166
specification	167
top up	167
Critical warning messages	43
Cruise control	95
ACC driving hints	98
ACC emergency braking	101
ACC follow mode	96
ACC gap change	97
ACC radar detection beam issues	99
ACC set speed and follow mode	
override	97
adaptive cruise control	96
adaptive cruise control malfunction	99
follow mode	96
forward alert in ACC	100
low speed switch-off of ACC	98
resume ACC follow mode	98
resume ACC set speed	98
using ACC	96
D	
DAB radio	
ensembles	112
settings	111
DAB radio controls	110
Data recording	205
Daytime running lamps	48
Dealer locations	140
Declarations of conformity	218
navigation system	145
Deselecting valet mode	66
Destination entry	136

Index

postcode.....	139
search area.....	136
Detection beam issues.....	99
Diesel	
filler flap.....	149
fuel.....	147
misfuel device.....	149
sulphur content.....	147
water in fuel.....	148
Diesel engines.....	148
Diesel particulate filter (DPF).....	154
cold weather driving.....	154
driving short distances.....	154
sulphur content.....	147
Differential control.....	88
Dimensions.....	211
Direction indicators.....	47
warning lamp.....	46
Door mirrors.....	54
blind spot monitor.....	56
sensors.....	57
Door transceiver	
assistance.....	60
erase all programming.....	59
garage door opener.....	58
programming.....	58
programming a single button.....	59
programming the garage door opener.....	58
rolling code device programming.....	59
Double locking.....	13
full alarm.....	14
Drive away locking.....	7
Driver controls.....	
Driving	
ACC automatic switch-off.....	98
ACC driving hints.....	98
ACC emergency braking.....	101
ACC follow mode.....	96
ACC forward alert.....	100
ACC gap change.....	97
ACC low speed switch-off.....	98
ACC malfunction.....	99
ACC radar detection beam issues.....	99
ACC set speed and follow mode override.....	97
activating intelligent stop/start.....	82
adaptive cruise control.....	96
after a collision.....	205
arduous conditions.....	155
automatic speed limiter.....	94
before starting.....	205
blind spot monitor.....	56
blind spot monitor messages.....	57
brakes important information.....	90
daily checks.....	154
deactivating intelligent stop/start.....	82
driver controls.....	
DSC active warning lamp.....	44
electronic brake force distribution.....	90
emergency brake assist.....	90
emergency stop signal.....	91
forward alert.....	100
forward alert warning lamp.....	45
rain sensor.....	52
resume ACC follow mode.....	98
resume ACC set speed.....	98
running-in.....	153
sitting correctly.....	19
using ACC.....	96
using cruise control.....	95
weekly checks.....	154
Driving abroad	
beam pattern.....	49
headlamps.....	49
Driving position memory.....	18
recalling a position.....	19
Driving short distances	
diesel particulate filter (DPF).....	154
Dynamic stability control (DSC).....	87
DSC active warning lamp.....	44
DSC off warning lamp.....	45
switching between DSC and tracDSC.....	88
switching off.....	88
switching on.....	88
E	
Easy route.....	137

Electric parking brake.....	90	luggage compartment.....	7
Electric seats.....	16	tailgate operation.....	7
head restraint removal.....	25	Ethanol.....	146
position memory.....	18	EU conformity (navigation system).....	145
recalling a memory position.....	19	Event data recording.....	205
Electric windows		Executive class rear seats	
operation.....	61	passenger seat away.....	19
Electronic brake force distribution.....	90	Exiting the vehicle	
Electronic data.....	205	closing mislock.....	14
Emergency (navigation).....	139	door locks and release levers.....	13
Emergency brake assist.....	90, 100	double locking.....	13
Emergency stop signal.....	91	full alarm.....	14
hazard warning lamps.....	91	global closing.....	14
Engine		interior locks.....	13
antifreeze level.....	166	keyless locking.....	14
compartment opening.....	155	lock confirmation.....	13
coolant level.....	166	passive arming.....	15
diesel.....	148	perimeter alarm.....	15
diesel fuel.....	147	single locking.....	13
diesel particulate filter (DPF).....	154	Exterior cleaning.....	159
oil level.....	164	Exterior mirrors	
petrol fuels.....	146	electric.....	54
running-in.....	153	manual.....	54
specifications.....	208	mirror dip when reversing.....	55
starting			
keyless start backup.....	81		
switching off.....	80		
Engine/transmission warning lamp.....	44		
Engine block heaters			
antifreeze.....	81	Favourite locations	
cold starting.....	81	navigation.....	138
connecting to mains supply.....	81	navigation details.....	138
Engine compartment		First aid kit.....	158
fluid filler locations.....	162	Flat spots.....	189
Engine compartment cleaning.....	159	Fluids	
Engine oil		brake	
capacity.....	213	check.....	168
Engine starting.....	80	specification.....	168
failure to start.....	81	top up.....	168
Entering a destination.....	136	capacities.....	213
Entering the vehicle		coolant	
entry and exit mode.....	26	specification.....	167
global opening.....	6	top up.....	167
keyless entry.....	6	engine oil check.....	164
		filler locations.....	162
		oil	
		top up.....	166

Index

power steering	148
specification	169
power steering check	169
specifications	209
washer fluid	170
check	170
specification	170
Fog lamps	
warning lamps	
rear	45
Follow	
override	97
Follow mode	
entering	96
gap change	97
gap changing	97
override	98
resume	98
Forward alert	100
Forward alert in ACC	
object detection	100
Forward alert warning lamp	45
Front airbags	38
Front climate control	67
automatic recirculation	68
Front parking aids	92
system fault	93
Front wipers	51
winter park position	157
Fuel and refuelling	149
consumption	151
diesel	147
diesel fuel sulphur content	147
ethanol	146
filler flap	149
fuel filler flap	148
methanol	146
methyl tertiary butyl ether (MTBE)	147
misfuel device	149
octane rating	146
petrol	146
running out	147
safety precautions	146
tank capacity	150
water in fuel	148
Fuel consumption	151
combined cycles	152
extra-urban cycle	152
urban cycle	152
Fuel filler flap	148
Fuel system	155
Fuel tank	
capacity	213
Full screen view for video	122
Fuses	
changing	175
engine compartment fuse box	176
locations	175
luggage compartment fuse box	180
passenger compartment fuse box	178
G	
Garage door opener	58
assistance	60
entry gate	60
erase all programming	59
programming	58
programming a rolling code device	59
programming a single button	59
Gearbox	
automatic	84
driver controls	
emergency park release	203
identification number	207
limp home mode	86
winter mode	87
Gear shift (green)	42
Glass cleaning	159
Global closing	14
Global opening	6
H	
Handbook symbols	2
Handbrake	90
Hazard warning lamps	
emergency stop signal	91
Headlamps	47

adaptive.....	48	Indicators warning lamp.....	46
approach lamps.....	48	Information messages.....	43
beam pattern.....	49	Infotainment	
bulb changing.....	156	automatic station retune.....	109
condensation.....	49	CD loading.....	103
daytime running lamps.....	48	DAB radio	
driver controls.....		settings.....	111
driving abroad.....	49	stations.....	112
high beam assist.....	48	DAB radio controls.....	110
high beam assist warning lamp.....	45	full screen view.....	122
high beam warning lamp.....	45	media player controls.....	121
warning lamp (AFS).....	45	portable media	
washers.....	52	changing.....	118
Head restraints		connecting devices.....	115
active.....	37	connecting multiple devices.....	117
front seats.....	24	connections.....	115
rear seats.....	24	controls.....	113
Heated seats.....	69	pairing.....	117
Heated steering wheel.....	26	playing.....	116
Heating and ventilation.....	67	radio controls.....	108
automatic recirculation.....	68	sound settings.....	103
driver controls.....		touch screen	
front.....	67	audio/video controls.....	102
heated and cooled seats.....	69	care.....	64
heated seats.....	69	home menu.....	63
High beam assist.....	48	settings.....	64
Home (navigation).....	138	setup.....	64
Homelink.....	58	TV controls.....	119
assistance.....	60	Instrument panel.....	161
erase all programming.....	59	display units.....	42
gate/door opener.....	60	fuel range.....	41
programming.....	58	gear shift (green).....	42
programming a single button.....	59	lamp test.....	43
programming the garage door opener.....	58	service indicator.....	42
rolling code device programming.....	59	warning lamps.....	43
		warning messages.....	41
I		Intelligent emergency braking	
Identifying the vehicle		ACC.....	101
transmission number.....	207	Intelligent stop/start	
Ignition		activating.....	82
rolling re-start.....	81	deactivating.....	82
switching on.....	80	Intelligent stop/start warning lamp.....	45
Indicator lamps.....	47	Interior cleaning.....	160–161
Indicators.....	47	airbag covers.....	161

Index

carpets and mats.....	161
Interior lamps.....	50
types.....	50
Interior locking.....	13
ISOFIX anchor points.....	34

J

Jump starting	
connecting a starting aid.....	173
connecting jump leads.....	172
disconnecting jump leads.....	173

K

Keyless entry.....	6
Keyless locking.....	14

L

Label locations.....	207
Lamps.....	47
auto lamps wiper detection.....	48
condensation.....	49
test.....	43
TPMS warning lamp.....	45
warning lamps.....	43
Leather cleaning.....	160
Licence plate bulb.....	156
Licensing	

audio/video.....	104, 106
------------------	----------

Lighting	
interior lamps locations.....	50

Limp home mode.....	86
---------------------	----

Load carrying	
cover.....	72
luggage divider.....	74

Load securing.....	73
--------------------	----

Loadspace cover.....	72
----------------------	----

Loadspace floor	
luggage rails and divider.....	74

Locking	
automatic relocking.....	15
confirmation.....	13
door locks and release levers.....	13
double locking.....	13

drive away.....	7
global closing.....	14
keyless.....	14
mislock.....	14
security sensor fault.....	15
single.....	13
Locking wheel nuts.....	201
Lubricants specifications.....	209
Luggage compartment	
anchor points.....	73
cover.....	72
divider kit.....	74

M

Maintenance	
arduous driving conditions.....	155
brake fluid level.....	168
bulb changing.....	156
capacities.....	213
changing a fuse.....	175
checking tyre pressure after a repair.....	196
cleaning	
alloy wheels.....	159
exterior.....	159
glass.....	159
interior.....	160–161
leather.....	160
rear screen.....	160
seat belts.....	161
sensors and cameras.....	159
the engine compartment.....	159
closing the bonnet.....	156
daily checks.....	154
diesel particulate filter (DPF).....	154
disconnecting jump leads.....	173
engine compartment fuse box.....	176
engine coolant level.....	166
engine oil level.....	164
fuel system.....	155
fuse box (passenger compartment).....	178
jump starting.....	173
label locations.....	207
lubricants and fluid specifications.....	209
luggage compartment fuse box.....	180

number plate bulb.....	156	destination entry by postcode.....	139
oil top up.....	166	easy route.....	137
paintwork repair.....	159	emergency contacts.....	139
polishing.....	160	favourite locations.....	138
power steering fluid level.....	169	home location.....	138
removing grease and tar.....	160	legals.....	143–145
removing stains.....	161	licence terms.....	143–144
running-in.....	153	licensing.....	143–145
smart key battery.....	11	map.....	139
sunroof wind deflector.....	160	auto zoom.....	135
tyre repair kit.....	194	split screen.....	135
tyre repair procedure.....	195	menu.....	133
using a starting aid.....	173	motorway entry/exit selection.....	139
washer fluid level.....	170	operating.....	132
washer jets.....	156	overview.....	131
weekly checks.....	154	points of interest (POI).....	140
Manual gear change point.....	42	categories/sub-categories.....	140
Manual seats.....	18	search.....	140
head restraint removal.....	25	previous destinations.....	139
Map.....	139	quick POI selection.....	138
auto zoom.....	135	restore defaults.....	138
split screen.....	135	screen modes.....	136
Message centre display units.....	42	start guidance.....	137
Methanol.....	146	TMC.....	141, 143
Minor paintwork repairs.....	159	display.....	141
Mirrors		icons.....	142
blind spot monitor.....	56	voice commands.....	124
sensors.....	57	voice guidance.....	138
dip when reversing.....	55	warranty disclaimer.....	144
driver controls.....	55		
exterior mirrors.....	54		
Misfuel device.....	149		
Monitoring system (battery).....	172		
Motorway entry/exit			
route setting.....	139		
Mpg.....	151		
N			
Navigation			
Arabic language.....	141		
automatic route learning.....	138		
avoid points.....	137		
destination entry.....	136		
search area.....	136		
Octane rating.....	146		
petrol.....	146		

O

Occupant safety

active seat belts.....	29
child seat tether straps.....	35
cleaning seat belts.....	161
recommended child seats.....	34
seat belt pre-tensioners.....	30
seat belt reminder warning.....	29
seat belt safety.....	28
seat belts warning lamp.....	44
using seat belts.....	27

Index

Oil	
engine oil specification	166
filler locations	162
specification	209
top up	166
used engine oil	155
One-touch operation (windows)	62
Opening the bonnet	155
Oversteer	87
Overview	
driver controls	
Owner maintenance	154
P	
Paddle shift	85
Paintwork	
cleaning	159
repair	159
Pairing	
via the phone	127
Pairing a phone	128
Park assist	
cleaning sensors and cameras	159
Parking aids	
cleaning sensors and cameras	159
operating	92
rear camera	93
system fault	93
Parking brake	90
Park position emergency release	203
Parts	153
Passenger compartment fuse box	178
Passive alarm arming	15
Pedestrian protection system	205
after deployment	205
Perimeter alarm	15
Petrol	
fuel types	146
Petrol consumption	151
Petrol filler flap	149
Phone	
Bluetooth compatibility	127
call volume	129
change the phone	128
Icons	128
overview	126
pairing via the phone	127
pairing via the touch screen	128
phonebook	129
safety	127
steering wheel controls	129
Points of interest (POI)	140
my POI	140
search	140
Polishing the bodywork	160
Portable media	
changing device	118
connecting devices	115
connecting multiple devices	117
connections	115
controls	113
pairing	117
playing	116
Postcode	
destination entry	139
Powered tailgate	9
opening height	10
Power steering	
fluid	
specification	169
fluid level	169
Pressure checking (tyres)	
checking after a repair	196
Pressures	
tyres	183
Previous destination	139
Puncture repair kit	194
instructions for use	194
repair procedure	195
safety	194
Q	
Quick POI selection	138
R	
Radio	
automatic station retune	109

controls.....	108
DAB	
settings.....	111
stations.....	112
DAB controls.....	110
Radio data system auto retune.....	109
Radio frequency regulations.....	216
Rain sensor.....	52
RDS	
TMC	
display.....	141
icons.....	142
overview.....	141
Rear camera	
parking aids.....	93
Rear fog lamps warning lamp.....	45
Rear screen cleaning.....	160
Rear seats	
executive class seats.....	19
folding and raising.....	20
passenger seat away.....	19
safety.....	20
ski hatch.....	23
Rear window blind.....	61
Recalling seat memory position.....	19
Recording	
event data.....	205
service data.....	205
Recovery	
towing eyes.....	202
transmission park release.....	203
transporting.....	203
Refuelling	
diesel.....	147
diesel fuel sulphur content.....	147
ethanol.....	146
fuel filler flap.....	148
methanol.....	146
MTBE.....	147
octane rating.....	146
petrol.....	146
running out of fuel.....	147
safety precautions.....	146
Reminder (seat belt).....	29
Remote control	
care.....	11
driving position memory.....	18
single locking.....	13
smart key battery.....	11
system transmitters.....	215
Removing a head restraint.....	25
Removing stains.....	161
Removing the spare wheel.....	200
Repairing paintwork damage.....	159
Replacement tyres.....	188
Resetting the windows.....	157
Restarting the engine while moving.....	81
Restore navigation default settings.....	138
Resume speed and follow mode (ACC).....	98
Reverse parking aids.....	92
system fault.....	93
Rolling re-start.....	81
Rotary gear selector.....	85
Route.....	
favourite locations.....	138
favourites details.....	138
Running-in.....	153
Running out of fuel.....	147

S

Safety	
active seat belts.....	29
child safety locks.....	31
cleaning seat belts.....	161
fuel and refuelling.....	146
seat belt pre-tensioners.....	30
seat belt reminder warning.....	29
seat belts.....	28
seat belts warning lamp.....	44
seats for larger children.....	34
sitting correctly.....	19
tyre care.....	183
tyre pressures.....	183
used engine oil.....	155
using seat belts.....	27
using the telephone.....	127
warning triangle.....	158

Index

Safety in the garage	144
battery precautions	155
electrical components	155
engine fans	155
exhaust gases	155
hot components	155
jacking	155
Satellite navigation	
Arabic language	141
automatic route learning	138
avoid points	137
cancel guidance	138
coordinates entry	139
dealer locations	140
destination entry	136
search area	136
destination entry by postcode	139
easy route	137
emergency contacts	139
favourite locations	138
home location	138
legals	143–145
licence terms	143–144
licensing	143–145
map	139
auto zoom	135
split screen	135
menu	133
motorway entry/exit selection	139
operating	132
overview	131
points of interest (POI)	140
categories	140
search	140
previous destinations	139
quick POI selection	138
restore defaults	138
screen modes	136
start guidance	137
TMC	141, 143
display	141
icons	142
voice commands	124
voice guidance	138
warranty disclaimer	144
Screen modes	136
Screen settings	
screensaver	64
theme	64
time out period	64
volume pop-up	64
Screen wash	
check	170
specification	209
topping up	170
Search area (navigation)	136
Seat belts	27, 161
active	29
adjusting	27
checks	29
pre-tensioners	30
reminder warning	29
safety	28
warning lamp	44
Seats	
child restraint check list	32
child seat positioning	33
child seats	31
child seat tether straps	35
cleaning seat belts	161
climate	69
electric front	16
executive rear seats	19
front head restraints	24
head restraint removal	25
heated	69
manual front	18
passenger seat away	19
position memory	18
rear head restraints	24
rear seat folding and raising	20
rear seat safety	20
rear seat ski hatch	23
recalling a memory position	19
recommended child seats	34
seat belts warning lamp	44
sitting correctly	19
Securing luggage	73

Security.....	14	fuel tank capacity.....	150
alarm.....	153	label locations.....	207
tilt sensor.....	15	lubricants.....	209
automatic perimeter alarm.....	15	methanol.....	146
automatic relocking and arming.....	15	MTBE.....	147
battery backed sounder.....	15	weight.....	210
closing mislock.....	14	wheel alignment.....	214
deactivating the alarm.....	15	Speed-dependent wipers.....	52
lock confirmation.....	13	Speed limiting.....	94
perimeter alarm.....	15	Split screen map.....	135
single locking.....	13	SRS.....	37
Security sensors.....	15	airbag warning lamp.....	45
fault.....	15	Stability control.....	
Selecting valet mode.....	65	DSC.....	87
Sensors.....		switching between DSC and tracDSC.....	88
blockage (BSM).....	57	switching on.....	88
Servicing.....		switching off.....	88
airbags.....	40	tracDSC.....	87
data recording.....	205	Starting after a collision.....	205
Set speed limit.....	94	Starting the engine.....	80
Settings menu.....		engine block heaters.....	81
display units.....	42	failure to start.....	81
Side lamps warning lamp.....	46	keyless start backup.....	81
Silencing the alarm.....	15	Start navigation guidance.....	137
Sitting correctly.....	19	Steering column.....	
Ski hatch.....		lock.....	7
rear seats.....	23	vehicle recovery.....	7
Smart key.....		Steering wheel.....	
approach lamps.....	48	adjusting.....	26
battery changing.....	11	AUTO position.....	26
care.....	11	heated.....	26
driving position memory.....	18	Steering wheel controls.....	
single locking.....	13	speed limiter.....	94
transmitters.....	215	telephone.....	129
Snow chains.....	190	Stop/start.....	
Sound settings.....	103	activating.....	82
Spare wheel.....	200	deactivating.....	82
using wheel chocks.....	201	Storage compartments.....	70
Specifications.....		cup holders.....	70
capacities.....	213	front cubby box.....	70
dimensions.....	211	rear armrest.....	70
engine.....	208	Storage compartments areas.....	
ethanol.....	146	glove box.....	70
fluids.....	209	Sun blind.....	61

Index

Sunroof	127
anti-trap protection	62
blind operation	61
operation	61
reset	157
Supplementary restraint system (SRS)	129
airbag deployment	39
airbag locations	37
airbags maintenance	153
airbag warning lamp	39, 45
curtain airbags	38
front airbags	38
side airbags	38
Suspension	141
adaptive dynamics	89
Switching off the engine	119
Switching on the ignition	119
T	15
Tailgate	64
opening and closing	9
powered opening height	10
Technical specifications	111
brake fluid	209
capacities	213
dimensions	211
engine	208
engine coolant	209
engine oil	209
radio frequency regulations	216
washer fluid	209
weights	210
wheel alignment	214
Telephone	126
Bluetooth compatibility	127
call volume	129
change the phone	128
compatibility list	127
hands free operation	126
icons	128
overview	126
pairing	128
via the phone	127
phonebook	129
safety	127
steering wheel controls	129
Television	119
controls	119
Tilt sensor	15
TMC	141
Touch screen	161
ambience lighting	65
audio/video controls	102
automatic recirculation	68
button feedback	64
changing portable media device	118
clock	64
connecting multiple portable media devices	117
connecting portable media devices	115
DAB radio controls	110
DVD player controls	121
front climate control	67
heated and cooled seats	69
heated seats	69
home menu	63
inhibited display	122
language selection	64
portable media controls	113
portable media connections	115
portable media pairing	117
portable media playing	116
radio controls	108
screen settings	64
setup	64
shortcuts	64
system settings	64
telephone	128
pairing	129
phonebook	129
touch screen care	64
trip computer	65
TV controls	119
valet mode	65
vehicle settings	65
video player controls	121
volume presets	64

Tow bar	trip distance.....	41
mounting points.....		79
Tow eye (front).....	Turning on the engine	
Towing	engine block heaters.....	81
a trailer.....	TV	
checks	controls.....	119
breakaway cable.....	Tyre pressure checking after a repair.....	196
calculating weight.....	Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....	192
essential checks.....	tyre care.....	183
lights.....	valves.....	188
nose weight limit.....	warning lamp.....	45
tow ball.....	Tyre pressures.....	193
eyes.....	Tyre repair kit	
tow bar dimensions.....	checking pressures.....	196
tow bar mounting points.....	repair procedure.....	195
trailer electrical connections.....	safety information.....	194
trailer sway mitigation.....	using.....	194
weights.....	Tyres	
tracDSC.....	age degradation.....	189
Traction control	changing.....	193
switching between DSC and tracDSC.....	flat spots.....	189
switching off.....	important information.....	201
switching on.....	Indian regulations.....	191
tracDSC.....	pressures.....	183
Traffic message channel (TMC).....	repair kit.....	194
Trailer	repair kit use.....	194
electrical connections.....	repair procedure.....	195
towing weights.....	replacements.....	188
Transmission	snow chains.....	190
automatic.....	speed ratings.....	183
driver controls.....	temporary use spare.....	193
emergency park release.....	TPMS.....	192
identification number.....	warning lamp.....	45
limp home mode.....	tyre care.....	183
winter mode.....	tyre repair safety.....	194
Transmission park release.....	tyre wall markings.....	182
Transmitters	use of spare tyre.....	201
smart key.....	valves.....	188
Transporting the vehicle.....	vehicle loading.....	193
Trip computer.....	wall markings.....	182
average speed.....	winter.....	189
fuel consumption.....		
fuel range.....		
reset.....		
	U	
	Understeer.....	87
	Unlocking.....	13

Index

all doors.....	4
driver's door.....	4
entry and exit mode.....	26
global opening.....	4, 6
keyless entry.....	6
luggage compartment.....	7
mode.....	4
multi point entry.....	4
opening the tailgate.....	9
single point entry.....	4
USB devices	
connecting multiple devices.....	117
Used engine oil.....	155
Using adaptive cruise control.....	96
Using cruise control.....	95
Using the parking aids.....	92
Using the spare tyre	
important information.....	201
Using wheel chocks.....	201

V

Valet mode.....	65
deselecting.....	66
Vehicle alarm.....	153
Vehicle battery	
connecting jump leads.....	172
replacing.....	174
warning symbols.....	171
Vehicle battery care.....	171
Vehicle build date.....	207

Vehicle cleaning	
airbag covers.....	161
alloy wheels.....	159
automatic car wash.....	159
carpets and mats.....	161
engine compartment.....	159
interior.....	160–161
rear screen.....	160
sunroof.....	160
washer jets.....	156
Vehicle data recording.....	205
Vehicle identification	
transmission number.....	207
Vehicle loading tyre pressures.....	193

Vehicle recovery	
attaching the front tow eye.....	202
steering column lock.....	7
towing eyes.....	202
transmission park release.....	203
transporting the vehicle.....	203
Vehicle settings.....	65
trip computer.....	65
Video media player	
controls.....	121
full screen view.....	122
inhibited display.....	122
VIN number.....	207
Voice control.....	123
navigation POI categories.....	124
recognising your voice.....	124
settings	
command list.....	64
operating guide.....	64
preferences.....	64
voicetags.....	64
voice training.....	64
training the system.....	124
tutorial.....	124
voicetags.....	124
Voice guidance.....	138
Volume	
telephone.....	129

W

Warning lamps.....	43
ABS.....	44
ACC.....	45
adaptive cruise control.....	45
adaptive front lighting system (AFS).....	45
airbags.....	39, 45
automatic speed limiter.....	45
brake.....	43
critical warning message.....	43
DSC active.....	44
engine/transmission.....	44
forward alert.....	45
headlamp high beam.....	45
high beam assist.....	45

indicators.....	46	Wheels and tyres	
intelligent stop/start (green).....	45	age degradation.....	189
lamp test.....	43	changing a tyre.....	193
rear fog lamps.....	45	checking the pressures after a repair.....	196
seat belt.....	44	flat spots.....	189
side lights.....	46	Indian regulations.....	191
tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....	45	pressures.....	183
Warning triangle.....	158	puncture repair.....	194
Washer jets.....	156	puncture repair safety.....	194
Washer reservoir		repair kit.....	194
capacity.....	213	repair kit use.....	194
Washers.....	51	repair procedure.....	195
fluid specification.....	170	replacements.....	188
fluid top up.....	170	snow chains.....	190
headlamps.....	52	temporary use spare.....	193
Washing		TPMS.....	192
automatic car wash.....	159	TPMS warning lamp.....	45
exterior paintwork.....	159	tyre care.....	183
removing grease.....	160	tyre speed ratings.....	183
removing stains.....	161	tyre wall markings.....	182
removing tar.....	160	valves.....	188
soft top.....	160	wheel alignment.....	214
Water in fuel.....	148	winter tyres.....	189
Weights		Wheel spin.....	87
gross vehicle weights.....	210	Windows	
roof load.....	210	anti-trap protection.....	62
roof rack weight.....	210	driver controls.....	
saloon.....	210	one-touch operation.....	62
sportbrake.....	210	operation.....	61
tow ball/hitch.....	77	reset.....	157
towing.....	77	sunroof blind.....	61
vehicle weights.....	210	sunroof operation.....	61
Wheel changing		sunroof reset.....	157
important information.....	201	Winter mode.....	87
locking wheel nuts.....	201	Winter park position.....	157
recommended process.....	199	Winter tyres.....	189
safety warnings.....	198	Wipers and washers.....	51
spare wheel.....	200	driver controls.....	
temporary spare wheel.....	201	fluid level.....	170
tilt sensor.....	199	rain sensor.....	52
use of spare tyre.....	201	speed-dependent mode.....	52
Wheel chocks use.....	201		

Controls overview

DRIVER CONTROLS

Note: Numbers in brackets refer to the page number where additional information can be found.

1. Parking aid (92).
2. Front map reading lamps (50).
3. Front courtesy lamps (50).
4. SRS (Supplementary restraint system) warning indicator (38).
5. Sunroof (61).
6. Rear screen sun blind (61).
7. Indicator/lighting control (47).
8. Gearshift down (84).
9. Audio controls (102).
10. Instrument panel. (41).
11. Message centre (41).
12. Cruise control or Adaptive cruise control (95/ 96).
13. Gearshift up (84).
14. Wipers/washers (51).
15. Touch screen (63).
16. Central locking/unlocking. (4/ 13).
17. Touch screen on/off (63/).
18. Hazard warning lamps on/off. (46).
19. Climate control or navigation menu (67/131).
20. Phone menu (Bluetooth only) (126).
21. Touch screen Home menu (63).
22. Intelligent stop/start (ECO) (82).
23. Glove box release.
24. Climate controls (67).
25. Heated screen switches (67).
26. Maximum screen defrost (67).
27. Dynamic stability control (88).
28. Automatic speed limiter (94).
29. Electric parking brake (90).
30. Dynamic mode (87).
31. Winter mode (87).
32. Gear selector (85).
33. Engine START/STOP button (80).
34. Audio controls (102).
35. CD/DVD eject button (102).
36. Horn/airbag (37).
37. Steering wheel adjuster (26).
38. Voice/Phone make call button (129).
39. Bonnet release (155).
40. Fog lamps on/off. (45).
41. Forward alert switch (100).
42. Luggage compartment release (7).
43. Instrument illumination - rotate to adjust.
44. Driving position memory (18).
45. Rear window isolator (61).
46. Window controls (61).
47. Mirror controls (54).

